

## I. GRAMMAR

## 1. Revision of the simple present tense

## a. Usage (Cách dùng)

Thì hiện tại đơn được dùng để diễn đạt:

## \* Một sự kiện xảy ra ở thời điểm hiện tại.

**Ex:** Mary is in her office now.

Mary đang có mặt trong văn phòng của cô ta vào lúc này.

## \* Một thói quen có tính chất thường xuyên, công việc thường ngày.

**Ex:** Mary takes her dog for a walk every evening.

Mary dắt con chó của cô đi dạo mỗi buổi tối.

## \* Một sự thật bao giờ cũng đúng (trước kia vẫn đúng, hiện giờ vẫn đúng và trong tương lai vẫn có thể còn đúng).

**Ex:** Twice two is four.

Hai lần hai là bốn.

## \* Một tình trạng hoặc một trạng thái có thật, đang hiện hữu, đang tồn tại; sự bày tỏ tình cảm, ý kiến, quan niệm.

**Ex:** I think it's a good idea.

Tôi cho đó là ý kiến hay.

Who knows the answer?

Ai biết câu trả lời?

## \* Một hành động ở tương lai khi thời gian trong tương lai được đưa ra cụ thể (thường dùng với các câu chỉ kế hoạch).

**Ex:** We leave for Mui Ne tomorrow.

Ngày mai chúng tôi đi Mũi Né.

The train leaves at 7 o'clock.

Xe lửa sẽ khởi hành vào lúc 7 giờ.

## Lưu ý:

- Thì hiện tại đơn đưa ra lời hướng dẫn ai đó thực hiện công việc nào đó.
- Thì hiện tại đơn thường được dùng kèm với những trạng từ chỉ thời gian hay các trạng từ chỉ sự thường xuyên (adverbs of frequency) như:



**every + time** (every day, every week, every Sunday ...)

**always** luôn luôn

**usually** thường thường

**often** thông thường

**sometimes** thỉnh thoảng

**frequently** thường xuyên

**hardly ever** hầu như không

▪ On + ngày trong tuần: **on Monday, on Tuesday...**

▪ In + the + đơn vị thời gian phân chia trong một ngày: **in the morning, in the evening, ...**

\* Khi chúng ta muốn bày tỏ một dự định nào đó, chúng ta thường sử dụng các từ như: **when, whenever, after, before, till, as soon as, ...**

**Ex:** Let's wait until the rain stops.

*Chúng ta hãy chờ cho đến khi mưa tạnh.*

## 2. Attributive and Predicative adjectives (Tính từ thuộc ngữ và tính từ vị ngữ)

**Tính từ thuộc ngữ:** Tính từ được dùng ngay trước một danh từ để miêu tả danh từ đó được gọi là tính từ thuộc ngữ.

**Ex:** He's a good teacher.



Attributive Adj    Noun

*Cậu ấy là một giáo viên giỏi.*

It's an interesting book.



Adj                  Noun

*Đó là một quyển sách hay.*

**Tính từ vị ngữ:** Tính từ theo sau động từ to **be, become, get, seem, look, feel...** được gọi là tính từ vị ngữ.

**Ex:** The baby is asleep.



To be    Predicative Adj

*Đứa bé đang ngủ.*

He's tall.

(Predicative Adj)

*Anh ấy cao.*

He looks afraid.



To look    Adj

*Anh ta có vẻ hoảng sợ.*

The weather is getting colder and colder.



To get                  Predicative Adj

*Thời tiết ngày càng trở nên lạnh.*

## 3. Enough: Đủ để có thể

Có những cấu trúc để đạt **enough** như:

**Adjective + enough + (for somebody) + to do something**

**Ex:** The explanation is clear enough for us to understand.

*Lời giải thích đủ rõ để chúng tôi hiểu.*

This house is big enough for us to live.

*Ngôi nhà này đủ lớn cho chúng tôi sống.*

**Adverb + enough + to do something**

**Ex:** You can't run fast enough to catch me.

*Bạn chạy không đủ nhanh để bắt được mình đâu.*

He speaks English clearly enough for me to understand.

*Anh ấy nói tiếng Anh đủ rõ cho tôi hiểu.*

**Enough + noun + to do something**

**Ex:** I have enough money to buy this house.

*Tôi có đủ tiền để mua căn nhà này.*

\* Ngoài ra **enough** còn có thể đi một mình.

**Ex:** Sorry, there aren't enough for all of you.

*Xin lỗi, không có đủ cho tất cả các bạn.*



#### 4. Revision of exclamations

Khi chúng ta muốn biểu đạt sự khen ngợi hay phàn nàn về r  
điều gì đó, chúng ta dùng câu cảm thán.

Cấu trúc câu cảm thán:

**What + adj + noun!**

**How + adj + subject + be!**

**Ex:** What a beautiful girl you are!

= How beautiful your are!

*Bạn thật là đẹp!*

What beautiful flowers!

= How beautiful the flowers are!

*Hoa đẹp quá!*

What an awful noise!

= How awful the noise is!

*Tiếng ồn kinh khủng làm sao!*

5. Khi muốn hỏi về đặc điểm của một người hay một vật nào đó,  
ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

**What + do + subject + look like?**

**What + does + subject + look like?**

**What + be + subject + like?**

**Ex:** What does Mr. Dung look like?

*Ông Dũng là người như thế nào?*

He's very sociable.

*Ông ấy rất hòa đồng.*

What's the weather like in Can Tho?

*Thời tiết ở Cần Thơ như thế nào?*

It's hot and dry.

*Nóng và khô.*

6. Khi muốn hỏi một người nào đó sống cùng với ai, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

**Who + do / does + subject + live with?**

**Ex:** Who do you live with in Singapore?

*Ở Singapore bạn sống cùng ai?*

I live with my friends.

*Tôi sống cùng với các bạn tôi.*

#### II. EXERCISES

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

- |                        |                              |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>an</u> noy    | B. <u>con</u> clusion        | C. <u>com</u> mmercial | D. <u>con</u> tinent   |
| 2. A. <u>de</u> aft    | B. <u>le</u> af              | C. <u>le</u> ave       | D. <u>be</u> en        |
| 3. A. <u>mi</u> ce     | B. <u>de</u> vice            | C. <u>ma</u> chine     | D. <u>st</u> yle       |
| 4. A. <u>me</u> ssage  | B. <u>ho</u> mepage          | C. <u>pa</u> ssage     | D. <u>co</u> ttage     |
| 5. A. <u>tran</u> smit | B. <u>lan</u> dscap <u>e</u> | C. <u>pen</u> cil      | D. <u>demon</u> strate |

**Task 2. Change ( \_ ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                 |                   |                          |
|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. r _ ce _ ve  | 2. _ lo _ d       | 3. _ ha _ act _ r        |
| 4. _ oci _ bl _ | 5. _ rp _ ana _ e | 6. l _ ck _              |
| 7. g _ nero _ s | 8. _ xtr _ me _ y | 9. _ olu _ te _ r        |
|                 |                   | 10. h _ rd - w _ rki _ g |

**Task 3. Change ( \_ ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                 |                  |                 |
|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. _ ext do _ r | 2. _ ro _ n      | 3. ba _ d       |
| 4. g _ ad _     | 5. _ ese _ ved   | 6. o _ tgo _ ng |
| 7. jo _ e       | 8. _ um _ ro _ s | 9. _ n _ oy     |
|                 |                  | 10. s _ y       |

**Task 4. Change ( \_ ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                    |               |                       |
|--------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. _ ppe _ ran _ e | 2. _ la _ et  | 3. k _ ep _ n to _ ch |
| 4. _ upb _ a _ d   | 5. l _ d _ er | 6. _ illi _ gly       |
| 7. _ rie _ ds _ ip | 8. _ utu _ l  | 9. t _ us _ ed        |
|                    |               | 10. e _ rt _          |

**Task 5. Combine the following sentences using the structures with enough.**

(not) adjective + enough (for someone/something) + to do something

- The weather today is warmer. You can go out.
- Is she intelligent? Will she be able to find it out?
- They were very quick. They were able to catch the thief.
- The shoes are too small. I can't wear them. (use big)
- As students in the 8<sup>th</sup> grade, we are still young. We can't ride a motorbike. (use old)



**Task 6. Correct these wrong sentences (underline the mistake and correct it.) The first is done as an example.**

1. I didn't went to the cinema last night ..... go .....
2. He don't go to the class today.....
3. My sister hasn't breakfast very often .....
4. Mr. Brown doesn't lives in a big city. He Hive in the country .....
5. They have a full of flowers garden .....
6. He isn't enough strong to lift the bag .....
7. This coffee is too heavy for drink .....
8. They no from Greece .....
9. Mr and Mrs. Mike is on holiday .....
10. Our car new is green .....

**Task 7. Open the brackets with the correct tense of the verbs.**

1. We (finish) ..... our dinner half an hour ago.
2. The farmer (work) ..... in the field now.
3. Mrs. Green always (go) ..... to work by bus.
4. She paid for the ticket and (leave) .....
5. Do you know that man who (smoke) ..... over there?
6. Rivers usually (flow) ..... to the sea.
7. If it costs too much, I (buy) ..... a small one.
8. How often .....you (read) .....a newspaper?
9. As soon as he (finish) .....his work, he (go) .....home.
10. I (give) .....it to them when they (visit) ..... us.

**Task 8. Choose the best word or phrase for the sentences. Circle A, B, C or D.**

1. I like .....  
A. cook      B. to cook      C. cooking      D. cooked
2. She likes pop music but she..... rock music.  
A. likes      B. liking      C. don't like      D. doesn't like
3. Tuan loves ..... instant noodles.  
A. eat      B. eats      C. eating      D. don't eat
4. I can't play football because my feet .....  
A. is ach      B. hurt      C. hurts      D. are feeling
5. ....is asking some questions to his students.  
A. The students      B. The teacher  
C. The doctor      D. The mother

6. Does he study hard?  
A. Yes, I do      B. No, he can't  
C. No, he doesn't      D. Yes, he can
7. Xuan..... a dress.  
A. is doing      B. is make      C. are making      D. is making
8. How does she drive? She.....  
A. drive good      B. drive well      C. drives well      D. drive low

**Task 9. Arrange these words into the correct order to have the meaningful sentences.**

1. dark has he hair got.  
.....
2. brother quite my looking good is.  
.....
3. and you brothers got? sisters have any  
.....
4. Bobby got hair has fair.  
.....
5. much postcards these are how?  
.....
6. you piano play? can the  
.....
7. can't car I a drive.  
.....
8. to morning in it's four the twenty.  
.....

**Task 10. Put the prepositions: at / on / in / of / with / to into the spaces of the sentences if necessary.**

1. I have to get up ..... half past six ..... Monday and Wednesday.
2. They usually stay ..... their family ..... Vietnamese New Year.
3. I went swimming ..... my friends ..... the weekend.
4. They decided to go ..... the cinema ..... Saturday evening.
5. I went to bed early ..... last night.
6. The new college term starts ..... September.
7. She met her boy friend ..... seven o'clock ..... the evening ..... last Friday.
8. When is your birthday? It's ..... the second ..... April.
9. Hanoi gets very hot ..... Summer.
10. What's the date today? It's ..... September 2<sup>nd</sup>.



**Task 11. Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence, using adjective + enough**

**Ex:** She can reach the top of the cupboard. She's tall.

→ She is tall enough to reach the top of the cupboard.

1. The ladder isn't very long. It doesn't reach the window.

2. He is strong. He can carry the suitcase.

3. The house was very expensive. We couldn't afford to buy it.

4. He was not patient. He couldn't wait for you.

5. That chair is uncomfortable. I don't want to sit on it.

6. These oranges are sour. We can't eat them.

7. You aren't well. You shouldn't go to school today.

8. I am not strong. I can't help you.

**Task 12. Put the words in the correct form**

1. She is a (beauty) \_\_\_\_\_ singer and she sings (beauty) \_\_\_\_\_.

2. My parents enjoy the (peaceful) \_\_\_\_\_ of the countryside.

3. Everybody works (quiet) \_\_\_\_\_ in the library.

4. Nguyen does everything (differently) \_\_\_\_\_ from his classmates.

5. Nga felt (extreme) \_\_\_\_\_ upset about losing her job.

**Task 13. Sentences transformation**

1. I am interested in telling the jokes.

I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.

2. He can touch the light because he is very tall.

He is \_\_\_\_\_.

3. My brother is very generous. He willingly lends someone money.

My brother is \_\_\_\_\_.

4. What does he look like?

What is \_\_\_\_\_?

5. The question is easy. We can answer it.

The question is \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 14. Choose the correct answer**

1. Each of us \_\_\_\_\_ a different character.

A. have B. has C. to have D. have has

2. Everybody will be at home \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas.

A. in B. on C. at D. about

3. I am \_\_\_\_\_ to buy this house.

A. enough rich not B. enough not rich  
C. not rich enough D. not enough rich

4. Now I am \_\_\_\_\_ office.

A. in B. on C. at D. to

5. Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ ?

A. jogging B. jog C. to jog D. making jog

**Task 15. Put the words in correct orders**

1. Brown / has / eyes / he / big.

2. She / a / man / short / married / fat.

3. My / teacher / long / straight / dark / has / hair.

4. Car / big / black / it / is / a.

5. She / a / beautiful / girl / is.

**Task 16. Put the verbs in the V-ing form**

1. They tried to avoid \_\_\_\_\_ (answer) my questions.

2. I dislike \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) uniform at school.

3. Could you please stop \_\_\_\_\_ (ask) such stupid questions?

4. He suggested \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for a while.

5. Have you finished \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the room yet?

**Task 17. Fill in the blanks with suitable forms of verbs**

1. Do you have any difficulties in \_\_\_\_\_ (solve) this problem?

2. He is good at \_\_\_\_\_ (repair) household.

3. He advised him \_\_\_\_\_ (not cross) the street against the red lights

4. She isn't tall enough \_\_\_\_\_ (reach) that high shelf.

5. Would you mind if I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a photo?



**Task 18. Fill in each blank with one suitable preposition**

1. Pick \_\_\_\_\_ your litter! Don't drop it on the street.
2. He used to smoke, but he gave \_\_\_\_\_ last year.
3. I'm looking \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday's newspaper. Have you seen it?
4. Could you fill \_\_\_\_\_ this form, please?
5. Don't worry about the baby. I'll look \_\_\_\_\_ her while you're away.

**Task 19. Put the correct tense of the verbs**

1. Kim (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to America last year.
2. I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ an English test last week.
3. Yesterday I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ Chau in the supermarket.
4. I (study) \_\_\_\_\_ this school 2 years ago.
5. When I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a child. I used to live there.

**Task 20. Give plural forms of these words**

1. knife
2. leaf
3. Thuy
4. foot
5. goose
6. sandwich
7. nurse
8. coach
9. house
10. chair

**Unit 2. MAKING ARRANGEMENTS**

**THU XẾP**

**GRAMMAR**

**Neither nor Không mà cũng không**

Ta dùng neither... nor để kết nối hai câu phủ định.

**Neither + Adj / Verb / Noun + nor ...**

**Ex:** The hotel is neither spacious nor comfortable.

*Khách sạn đó không rộng rãi mà cũng không tiện nghi.*

**•** Đôi khi có nhiều hơn hai ý cũng được nối bởi neither...nor.

**Ex:** She neither smiled, spoke, nor looked at me.

*Cô ta chẳng cười, chẳng nói và cũng chẳng nhìn tôi.*

**2. Offer**

\* Khi chúng ta muốn đề nghị với ai cho mình làm một việc gì đó, ta có thể dùng hai cấu trúc sau:

**Can I...?**

**Let me...**

**Ex:** Can I help you?

*Để tôi giúp bạn nhé?*

Let me do it.

*Hãy để tôi làm cho.*

\* Khi muốn đề nghị ai làm gì đó một cách lịch sự, chúng ta có thể dùng cấu trúc **"Would you like to... ?"**

**Ex:** Would you like to leave a message?

*Bạn có muốn để lại lời nhắn không?*

\* Khi chúng ta muốn hỏi ý kiến ai về việc gì, có thể dùng cấu trúc sau:

**To be + subject + ok/alright?**

**Ex:**

Is the Ngon restaurant alright?

*Nhà hàng Ngon được chứ?*

Is 5 o'clock OK?

*Năm giờ được chứ?*

**3. A little bit**

Để diễn tả ý có **"phần nào"**, **"hơi hơi"** chúng ta sẽ dùng *a little bit*, và theo sau *a little bit* là một tính từ hay một trạng từ.

**a little bit + adjective / adverb**

**Ex:** It's a little bit far from your house to here.

*Từ nhà bạn đến đây thì hơi xa.*

The question is a little bit difficult to answer.

*Câu hỏi này hơi khó trả lời.*

**4. Talking about intentions with going to**

Khi chúng ta đã có quyết định làm điều gì, chúng ta có thể dùng **going to**.

\* Chúng ta dùng **going to** khi một sự việc ở tình huống hiện tại biểu thị cho sự việc đó sẽ xảy ra ở tương lai và người nói chắc chắn về điều mình nói.



**Ex:** I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.

*Tôi đang cảm thấy khó chịu. Tôi nghĩ tôi sắp bị bệnh rồi.*

\* Để bày tỏ ý định, thông thường người ta dùng động từ **to be** (am/is/are) đi kèm với **going to + verb**.

#### a. Diễn đạt một ý định tương lai.

**Ex:** I am going to call Kim this evening.

*Tôi dự định gọi điện cho Kim vào chiều nay.*

#### b. Biểu hiện một ý định có dự tính trước, có sự sắp xếp trước (ý định đi kèm với kế hoạch).

**Ex:** I've bought some flour and I'm going to make a cake.

*Tôi đã mua một ít bột mì và tôi dự định làm một cái bánh.*

\* **Be going to** còn diễn tả sự quyết tâm.

**Ex:** I've reminded you many times. I am not going to do it again.

*Tôi đã nhắc nhở anh nhiều lần rồi. Tôi sẽ không làm điều ấy lần nữa đâu.*

**Lưu ý:** Hai động từ **come** and **go** thường được dùng với thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để diễn tả một dự định trong tương lai.

**Ex:** I am going to the movies with my friends tonight.

*Tôi sẽ đi xem phim cùng với những người bạn của tôi vào tối nay.*

Chúng ta không được nói :

"I am going to go to the movie with my friends tonight."

Ta cũng sử dụng động từ "**to come**" tương tự như động từ **to go**.

**Ex:** I am coming home late tonight.

*Tối nay tôi sẽ về nhà trễ.*

Chúng ta không được nói:

"I am going to come home late tonight."

\* Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn cũng có thể được dùng để nói về dự định (thường là những dự định đã được sắp xếp như gặp một ai đó, sắp xếp đi đâu).

**Ex:** I am going to Hue next summer.

*Mùa hè tới chúng tôi sẽ đi Huế.*

I am meeting Kim at her house at 5 o'clock.

*Tôi sẽ gặp Kim tại nhà của cô ta vào lúc 5 giờ.*

\* Trong văn nói người ta có thể thay **going to** bằng **gonna**.

**Ex:** She's going to leave here = She's gonna leave here.

*Cô ấy sắp rời khỏi đây.*

Câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng **Wh - questions**. Câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng **Wh** - ta có cấu trúc sau:

**Wh - question + be (am/is/are) + subject + going to + verb?**

**Ex:** When are you going to leave?

*Khi nào bạn rời khỏi đây?*

Tomorrow morning.

Sáng mai.

#### 5. Future with going to

##### a. Going to **biểu thị một hành động sắp xảy ra**.

**Ex:** The bus is going to leave in four minutes.

*Xe buýt sắp rời bến trong vòng bốn phút nữa.*

##### b. Going to **biểu thị cho sự cảm nhận của người nói một cách chắc chắn về sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai**.

**Ex:** Miss Lan is standing up. She's going to make a speech.

*Cô Lan đang đứng dậy. Cô ta sắp đọc một bài diễn văn.*

##### c. Going to **biểu thị cho một tình huống hiện tại sẽ ảnh hưởng đến tương lai**.

**Ex:** It's eight already. We're going to be late.

*Tám giờ rồi. Chúng ta sẽ đến muộn mất.*

##### d. **Biểu thị một sự việc chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra ở tương lai**.

**Ex:** Her French is very well. She's going to have a good job easily.

*Tiếng Pháp của cô ấy rất tốt. Cô ấy có thể dễ dàng tìm được một công việc tốt.*

#### 6. Adverbs of place

Trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn được dùng để cho biết hành động xảy ra nơi nào, chỗ nào, địa điểm nào.

□ Một số trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn thường dùng là: **Outside, inside, here, there, upstairs, downstairs.**



**\* Usage (Cách sử dụng)**

**• Outside:** bên ngoài

**Ex:** Let's go outside.

*Chúng ta ra ngoài nhé.*

*Don't go outside. It's too cold.*

*Đừng ra ngoài. Trời lạnh quá.*

**• Inside:** bên trong

**Ex:** Two minutes later we were inside the taxi.

*Hai phút sau, chúng tôi đã ngồi bên trong xe taxi.*

**• Here:** đây, ở đây.

**Ex:** She left here at 5 o'clock.

*Cô ấy đã rời khỏi đây vào lúc 5 giờ.*

*Let's get out of here.*

*Chúng ta hãy đi khỏi chỗ này.*

**• There:** đó, chỗ đó.

**Ex:** They will soon be there.

*Họ phải sớm có mặt ở đó.*

*I must get home. Nguyen's there on his own.*

*Tôi phải về nhà. Nguyễn đang ở một mình.*

**• Upstairs:** lên lầu, ở trên lầu, ở tầng trên

**Ex:** I ran back upstairs.

*Tôi chạy trở lại lên lầu.*

*He was upstairs when it happened.*

*Ông ta đã ở trên lầu khi sự việc xảy ra.*

*I heard someone talking upstairs last night.*

*Đêm qua chúng tôi nghe thấy ai nói chuyện ở tầng trên.*

**• Downstairs:** tầng dưới, dưới nhà, tầng trệt

*Kim is waiting for us downstairs.*

*Kim đang đợi chúng ta ở dưới nhà.*

*Mrs Lien went downstairs and into the kitchen.*

*Bà Liên đi xuống dưới nhà rồi đi vào bếp.*

**7. Asking about plan**

*\* Khi muốn hỏi ai đó, muốn biết kế hoạch của người đó như thế nào, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:*

**What are you going to do...?**

**- I'm going to...**

**Ex:** What are you going to do on weekends?

*Bạn sẽ làm gì vào cuối tuần?*

*I am going to the movies.*

*Tôi sẽ đi xem phim.*

**Hay chúng ta cũng có thể hỏi:**

What are you doing next Sunday?

*Bạn sẽ làm gì vào ngày chủ nhật tới?*

I am going to the movies.

*Tôi sẽ đi xem phim.*

*\* Khi muốn hỏi một người nào đó rằng chúng ta có thể gặp nhau ở đâu hay muốn hỏi mấy giờ chúng ta gặp nhau, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:*

**What time can we meet?**

**Where can we meet?**

**Ex:** Where can we meet?

*Chúng ta có thể gặp nhau ở đâu?*

*Và khi trả lời cho câu hỏi này ta dùng cấu trúc:*

**Let's meet ... (chúng ta hãy gặp nhau tại...)**

**Ex:** Let's meet outside the theater.

*Chúng ta hãy gặp nhau trước cửa nhà hát.*

**II. EXERCISES**

**Task 1. A. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

- |                        |                               |                      |                    |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>ch</u> imney  | B. <u>ch</u> ange             | C. <u>ch</u> aracter | D. <u>ch</u> ease  |
| 2. A. <u>c</u> age     | B. <u>o</u> rphan <u>a</u> ge | C. <u>s</u> tage     | D. <u>g</u> reat   |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> ociable | B. <u>s</u> ugar              | C. <u>s</u> eashore  | D. <u>c</u> eiling |
| 4. A. <u>r</u> eserved | B. <u>s</u> ervice            | C. <u>c</u> oncert   | D. <u>d</u> estroy |
| 5. A. <u>l</u> unch    | B. <u>j</u> ungle             | C. <u>v</u> olunteer | D. <u>m</u> uch    |



**Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. \_rr\_ng\_m\_nt
2. f\_x ma\_hi\_e
3. \_ub\_ic t\_lep\_on\_
4. a\_dr\_ss b\_ok
5. \_ob\_e p\_on\_
6. t\_lep\_one d\_re\_tor\_
7. \_ns\_eri\_g m\_chi\_e
8. d\_wnt\_irs
9. \_ps\_ai\_s
10. c\_us\_n

**Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. \_mi\_rati\_n
2. \_eaf-m\_te
3. \_xp\_rim\_nt
4. \_ran\_mis\_ion
5. \_nv\_nti\_n
6. a\_si\_ta\_t
7. co\_nt\_e\_s
8. \_ntr\_duc\_
9. d\_mo\_str\_te
10. c\_nd\_ct

**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. e-h\_biti\_n
2. \_om\_erc\_al
3. \_el\_v\_r s\_rvi\_e
4. c\_sto\_er
5. s\_ati\_ner\_
6. r\_ck\_t
7. t\_n\_is
8. \_ric\_
9. s\_rv\_ce
10. e\_hib\_t

**Task 5. Use be going to with the verbs in brackets.**

1. I (not have) breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
2. Look out! She (fall) off the rail.
3. Where we (spend) the night tonight?
4. My friends (get) married in August this year.
5. Look! The ambulance is coming. I (wave) to the driver.
6. You (invite) the newcomer of our class to your party?
7. My hair is dirty. I (wash) it.
8. We feel tired. We (lie) down for some sleep.

**Task 6. Complete these sentences with: will / won't/ (be) or (not be) going to.**

1. I ..... be very busy tonight so I ..... go to the cinema.
2. Xuan hasn't got much money so she ..... buy this.
3. Nhat lost his glasses yesterday. I think he..... buy some new ones.
4. I'm feeling so tired so I ..... go to bed late.
5. .... you turn the light on for me please?
6. When ..... return the book I lent you?

**Task 7. Choose the word or phrase which best completes each sentence. Circle letter A, B, C or D.**

1. He ..... to visit his parents tomorrow night.  
A. goes      B. went      C. is going      D. didn't go.
2. Oh! No, Hook at these black clouds. I .....it's going to rain.  
A. I am thinking      B. thought  
C. thinks      D. think
3. If you are ..... to night, why don't you come over to my house?  
A. free      B. busy      C. happy      D. plans

4. They are going to ..... a film tonight.  
A. look at      B. see      C. make      D. seeing
5. He .....his family out to dinner tonight.  
A. will taking      B. is taking to  
C. will take      D. is going to take
6. .... I help you with your bag?  
A. Will      B. Shall      C. Shan't      D. Won't

**Task 8. Correct these wrong sentences by choosing the mistakes, underline then correct them.**

1. I phone you when I will get home .....
2. What newspaper do you often buy? I'll buy the Times .....
3. Would you Hike to order it, Sir? - I have the lamb .....
4. The phone's ringing. I answer it .....
5. There's someone at the door. I am going to open the door .....
6. I'll call you as soon as I'll arrive there .....

**Task 9. Use the suggestions to make the meaningful sentences in correct grammar.**

1. She/ visit/ parents/ tomorrow evening.  
.....
2. The man/ not read/ newspaper/ because/ lose/ his glasses.  
.....
3. I/ be able/ speak/ English well/ if/ study hard.  
.....
4. Vietnamese New Year/ be/ my favorite festival.  
.....
5. Hong/ like/ play/ tennis/ much.  
.....
6. She/ have to/ stay/ bed/ one week/ after/ accident.  
.....

**Task 10. Put a suitable preposition into the space if necessary, if not, put 'x' to complete the sentences.**

1. I'm waiting ..... a postman to arrive.
2. Look ..... that picture! Isn't it beautiful!
3. I'm looking ..... Mary. Is she here?
4. My brother works ..... IBM.



5. We don't go to school ..... this week.
6. Are you interested ..... history?
7. I agree ..... you about most things but not politics.
8. My children are afraid ..... dogs.
9. Are you good ..... English?
10. This guide book is full ..... useful information.

#### Task 11. Make questions use going to

1. How / you / get / to school tomorrow?
2. What kind of car / he / buy?
3. Who / you meet / tonight?
4. What / Lan / wear / to the wedding party?
5. How long / your family / stay in Ha Noi?
6. When / you / paint / your house?
7. Where / you / buy / a new house?
8. Where / they / meet?

#### Task 12. Use the correct form in the parentheses

1. Alexander Graham Bell (success) \_\_\_\_ demonstrated his (invent) \_\_\_\_ in the publish.
2. You needn't shout because I am not (deafness) \_\_\_\_.
3. Alexander Graham Bell was born in (Scottish) \_\_\_\_.
4. Nga is one of my (friendly) \_\_\_\_\_. She always talks to everyone in a (friend) \_\_\_\_\_ way.
5. He told this fairy story to his daughter (count) \_\_\_\_\_ times.

#### Task 13. Sentence transformation

1. The question is very easy. All of us can answer it.  
The question \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Tuan is good at swimming.  
Tuan swims \_\_\_\_\_.
3. My brother usually fixes the household appliances very well.  
My brother \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I intend to visit my friends next Sunday.  
I am \_\_\_\_\_.
5. She doesn't go to the party because she has no time.  
She doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Task 14. Choose the correct answer

1. Can I speak \_\_\_\_\_ Kim, please? It van speaking.  
A. on B. at C. to D. with
2. He asks his children not to go \_\_\_\_\_ because of the cold weather.  
A. inside B. outside C. upstairs D. downstairs.
3. Where is the film \_\_\_\_\_ ? – At the Thang Long movie theatre.  
A. on B. in C. at D. under
4. Your sister didn't know the news, \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. did your sister B. did she  
C. didn't your sister D. didn't she
5. I'm sorry. My brother is out. Would you like to \_\_\_\_\_ him a message?  
A. write B. take C. tell D. leave
6. Mr Tan was out so Miss Nga \_\_\_\_\_ a message for him.  
A. called B. asked C. took D. spoke

#### Task 15. Translate into English

1. Làm ơn xuống lầu và lấy dùm tôi một ly nước.
2. Tôi đi khắp nơi trên thế giới nhưng không nơi nào đẹp bằng nơi này.
3. Mẹ có thấy cái kính của con không?  
Nó ở đâu đó trong phòng ngủ của con.
4. Tất cả bạn bè của tôi đều ở trong phòng khách. Họ đang nói chuyện rất vui vẻ.
5. Nhà cô ta ở một nơi nào đó trên đường phố này.
6. Người ta sẽ ăn cắp xe anh nếu xe anh không khóa.
7. Cô ấy nhất định sẽ giận giữ nếu cô ấy nghe điều này.
8. Anh ta có thích trứng luộc không?

#### Task 16. Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous

1. Someone (knock) \_\_\_\_\_ at the door. Shall I answer it?  
I (come) \_\_\_\_\_ in a minute. I just (wash) \_\_\_\_\_ my hands.
2. You (do) \_\_\_\_\_ anything this evening?  
No, I'm not.  
Well, I (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema. Would you like to come with me?
3. We (have) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at 6 tomorrow because Lan (catch) \_\_\_\_\_ an early train.
4. Nga usually does the shopping, but I (do) \_\_\_\_\_ it today because she isn't fine.
5. Philip (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to Da Lat with his friends next week.



**Task 17. Fill in the blank with "some" or "any"**

1. She never makes \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes in spelling.
2. Please give me \_\_\_\_\_ more coffee.
3. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ questions?
4. Are there \_\_\_\_\_ chairs in the living room?
5. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ money with me.
6. The baby is asleep. Please don't make \_\_\_\_\_ noise.

**Task 18. Fill in each blank with one suitable preposition**

1. You shouldn't laugh \_\_\_\_\_ the disabled.
2. Why don't you bring \_\_\_\_\_ an umbrella?
3. They listen to the music \_\_\_\_\_ the internet.
4. Remote controls are used to interact \_\_\_\_\_ TV.
5. Tuan left school \_\_\_\_\_ the age of 15.

**Task 19. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets to complete the following sentences**

1. We (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at seven o'clock tonight.
2. A dictionary is a book which (give) \_\_\_\_\_ you the meaning of words.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ now?
4. You can borrow my bike. I (not/ need) \_\_\_\_\_ it at the moment.
5. I never (get) \_\_\_\_\_ up early on Sundays.

**Task 20. Fill in each blank with "why, when, or where"**

1. What is the day \_\_\_\_\_ you celebrate your birth?
2. Da Lat is the city \_\_\_\_\_ I was born.
3. The pencil \_\_\_\_\_ you broke is my brother's.
4. Is this the problem \_\_\_\_\_ you are trying to solve?
5. Is this the program \_\_\_\_\_ you always watch on TV?

**Unit 3. AT HOME**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Reflexive pronouns**

Đại từ phản thân thường được dùng làm tân ngữ của động từ khi chủ ngữ và tân ngữ là cùng một người hay một vật.

**Ex:** She bought herself a new dress.

*Cô ấy tự mua (cho mình) một chiếc áo đầm mới.*

Don't worry. I can look after myself.

*Đừng lo. Tôi có thể tự chăm lo cho bản thân.*

\* Cách thành lập đại từ phản thân với self (số ít) và selves (số nhiều)  
Đại từ phản thân được chia làm 3 ngôi.

Person (ngôi)	Singular (số ít)	Plural (số nhiều)
First person (Ngôi thứ nhất)	myself	ourselves
Second person (Ngôi thứ hai)	yourself	yourselves
Third person (Ngôi thứ ba)	himself, herself, itself	themselves

\* Đại từ phản thân có thể được dùng ở hai vị trí khi nhấn mạnh vào chủ ngữ:

- Đứng liền sau chủ ngữ
- Đứng cuối câu

\* Đại từ phản thân phải cùng ngôi với chủ ngữ.

**Ex:** I myself wrote this report.

*Chính tôi đã viết bản báo cáo này.*

\* Khi nhấn mạnh chủ ngữ, đại từ phản thân có thể đứng cuối câu.

**Ex:** I wrote this report myself.

*Chính tôi đã viết bản báo cáo này.*

\* Đại từ phản thân được dùng để nhấn mạnh vào tân ngữ.

\* Khi nhấn mạnh vào tân ngữ, đại từ phản thân đứng ngay sau tân ngữ.

**Ex:** She sold this house itself.

*Cô ấy đã bán chính ngôi nhà này.*

\* Đại từ phản thân đứng ngay sau giới từ, nếu động từ có giới từ theo sau.

**Ex:** He sent a letter to himself.

*Cậu ta đã tự gửi thư cho mình.*

I am old enough to look after myself.

*Tôi đã đủ tuổi để tự chăm lo mình.*

• **By + đại từ phản thân** (myself, yourself, herself...) = **alone**: một mình

**Ex:** She lives by herself in a small house = She lives alone in a small house.

*Cô ấy sống một mình trong một ngôi nhà nhỏ.*

The boy is sleeping by himself in the room.

*Cậu bé đang ngủ một mình trong phòng.*



## 2. Modals (Động từ tình thái) : Must, have to, ought to

### a. Must

\* **Must** diễn tả ý muốn của người nói bắt buộc người nào đó phải làm gì.

**Ex:** You must fill in the form.

*Bạn phải điền vào tờ đơn này.*

You must do all the homework.

*Con phải làm tất cả những bài tập về nhà.*

\* **Must** diễn tả một điều gì đó có tính chất bắt buộc mà trước đây người nói không nghĩ đến.

**Ex:** I must save money for a new house.

*Tôi phải để dành tiền để mua một căn nhà mới.*

\* **Must** biểu đạt tình cảm riêng của người nói, khi người nói cho rằng điều sắp làm là cần thiết.

**Ex:** I must help her with that work.

*Tôi phải giúp cô ấy làm công việc đó.*

### b. Have to

\* **Have to** có nghĩa là **phải**. Mang tính chất làm vì nghĩa vụ, nhiệm vụ, bổn phận do nguyên nhân bên ngoài.

**Ex:** I have to clean this house this week.

*Tuần này tôi phải làm vệ sinh nhà cửa.*

\* **Have to** còn diễn tả một việc nào đó ngoài ý muốn mà chúng ta phải làm.

**Ex:** Students have to wear uniform when they go to school.

*Học sinh phải mặc đồng phục khi chúng đến trường.*

**Lưu ý: "Musn't" và "not have to"**

**Musn't do something:** không được phép làm điều gì.

**Ex:** You musn't come home late.

*Con không được phép về nhà trễ.*

You musn't smoke here.

*Anh không được phép hút thuốc ở đây.*

**Not have to:** không cần thiết phải làm gì.

**Ex:** Today is Sunday. I don't have to get up early.

*Hôm nay là Chủ nhật. Tôi không cần thiết phải thức dậy sớm.*

### c. Ought to

**Ought to** dùng với ý khuyên nhủ, nên làm điều tốt.

**Ex:** They ought to build more hospitals to help the poor.

*Họ nên xây nhiều bệnh viện để giúp đỡ người nghèo.*

\* Ta có thể dùng **must** thay cho **ought to** để khuyên nhủ, mang nghĩa mạnh hơn.

**Ex:** You must obey your parents.

*Bạn phải biết vâng lời cha mẹ.*

\* Khi dùng ở thể phủ định ta thêm **not** ở giữa **ought to**.

You ought not to (shouldn't) smoke cigarettes.

*Bạn không nên hút thuốc lá.*

## 3. Why and Because

Khi muốn đặt câu hỏi để tìm hiểu về nguyên nhân, lý do, ta dùng **why**.

Và khi muốn trả lời cho câu hỏi **why** ta dùng liên từ **because**.

**Ex:** Why did the students arrive late?

*Tại sao nhiều học sinh (đã) đến trễ?*

Because there was a traffic jam.

*Vì có sự cố kẹt xe.*

## II. EXERCISES

### Task 1. A. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?

- |                      |                   |                     |                       |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>match</u>   | B. <u>catch</u>   | C. <u>watch</u>     | D. <u>math</u>        |
| 2. A. <u>rug</u>     | B. <u>cushion</u> | C. <u>cupboard</u>  | D. <u>rule</u>        |
| 3. A. <u>knife</u>   | B. <u>wife</u>    | C. <u>nice</u>      | D. <u>children</u>    |
| 4. A. <u>bedroom</u> | B. <u>desk</u>    | C. <u>bookshelf</u> | D. <u>kitchen</u>     |
| 5. A. <u>happy</u>   | B. <u>try</u>     | C. <u>candy</u>     | D. <u>electricity</u> |

### Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

- |                |             |               |              |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. _h_re       | 2. c_pb_ar_ | 3. _tea_er    |              |
| 4. _in_        | 5. s_ucep_n | 6. f_yi_g p_n |              |
| 7. r_ce co_ker | 8. r_g      | 9. _rec_uti_n | 10. ch_m_ca_ |

### Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

- |           |                    |                |           |
|-----------|--------------------|----------------|-----------|
| 1. m_tc_  | 2. _est_ucti_n     | 3. c_ve_       |           |
| 4. _nj_re | 5. _le_tric s_ck_t | 6. _lect_ici_y |           |
| 7. r_ac_  | 8. be_d            | 9. _cis_ors    | 10. _ni_e |



**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |            |              |               |
|------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. _ol_er  | 2. _ar_rob_  | 3. _ow_l ra_k |
| 4. _en_at_ | 5. d_st_     | 6. t_din_ss   |
| 7. ta_k    | 8. _ide_al_s | 9. l_cki_st   |
|            |              | 10. m_sic_an  |

**Task 5. Fill the gaps with reflexive pronouns.**

1. He built a boat all by \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I, hurt \_\_\_\_\_ quite badly falling down the stairs.
3. The children did everything \_\_\_\_\_ without any help.
4. Maria and Alison, you really should look after \_\_\_\_\_ better.
5. Forget it! I'll do it \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I burnt \_\_\_\_\_ on the oven yesterday.
7. She blames \_\_\_\_\_ for what happened.
8. Bob taught \_\_\_\_\_ to type last summer.
9. I talk to \_\_\_\_\_ all the time' It doesn't mean I'm crazy.
10. We all enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ very much on the picnic.

**Task 6. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the words in the spaces**

1. My dad is really ..... He's always buying presents for every one. (generosity)
2. The disco was so ..... that you couldn't hear yourself speak. (noise)
3. I tried to lead a ..... lifestyle - lots of exercises, fruit, and no junk foods. (health)
4. You can get a credit card, you have to provide a lot of ..... details. (person)
5. My sister has got a very nice stamp ..... (collect)
6. The most popular ..... at recess is talking. (act)
7. In most countries, there are organizations especially for ..... (teen)
8. More and more young people want a university ..... (educate)

**Task 7. Put the following words in order to make questions. Remember to conjugate the verbs and add an auxiliary verb if required.**

1. he/ who/ visit/ last week/  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
2. which/ car/ kind of/ 300 k.p.h/ go  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

3. him/ invite/ who/ dinner/ to/ yesterday  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

4. which/ you/ TV/ buy  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

5. book/ they/ read/ which/ for/ class  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

6. who/ ask/ question/ the  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

**Task 8. Choose the correct answers.**

1. You \_\_\_\_\_ respect the rules when you walk your dog in this park.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
2. Before you enter the park, you \_\_\_\_\_ attach a leash to your dog's neck.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ enter the park until your dog is on a leash.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
4. You \_\_\_\_\_ allow your dog to run free.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ pick up your dog's poop (waste).  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ take it away with you. You can throw it in one of the garbage cans you find in the park.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
7. If your dog is running free and the police stop you, you will probably \_\_\_\_\_ pay a fine.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
8. Of course, you \_\_\_\_\_ walk your dog in the park. You can always go somewhere else. There are many places where you can walk a dog.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
9. You can, for example, walk your dog in the fields or on the beach, but even there you may \_\_\_\_\_ use a dog leash.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to
10. Many people have had bad experiences with dogs and are afraid of theirs. You \_\_\_\_\_ forget that fact when you walk your dog in public.  
A. must B. must not C. have to D. don't have to



**Task 9. Complete the text with the words in the boxes.**

quiet	see	he	money	live
neighbors	musician	plays	artist	plays
sidewalks	Paulo	jazz	and	best
restaurant	Susan	she	luckiest	

I live in one of the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ places in Washington D.C. It's a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ street with a lot of trees and a park on the corner. The (3) \_\_\_\_\_ are full of flowers. There's a little French (4) \_\_\_\_\_ across from my apartment, next to a pharmacy. My (5) \_\_\_\_\_ are interesting too. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ Guzman lives next door. I don't (7) \_\_\_\_\_ him very often. He is a (8) \_\_\_\_\_. (9) \_\_\_\_\_ sleeps during the day and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ at night. Every night he leaves his apartment at 10 o'clock and goes to a small (11) \_\_\_\_\_ club on Illinois Avenue. He (12) \_\_\_\_\_ Brazilian music there. (13) \_\_\_\_\_ - Flynn lives across the street next to the pharmacy. She is an (14) \_\_\_\_\_. (15) \_\_\_\_\_ paints pictures of our street and gives them to her friends. She doesn't need (16) \_\_\_\_\_. She is very rich. Many other musicians (17) \_\_\_\_\_ artists live in our neighborhood. I'm the (18) \_\_\_\_\_ person in the world. I (19) \_\_\_\_\_ on the best street in the city!

**Task 10. Find out the mistakes, underline and then correct them.**

- How much apples do you want? .....many.....
- I don't like an ice cream. ....
- I'm hungry. I like a sandwich. ....
- I'd like some fruits please. ....
- What's the matter? I have thirsty. ....
- We didn't wanted to go to the park. ....
- I can to help you. ....
- It's starting rain. ....
- I'm looking forward to see you again soon ....
- I think to change my job ....

**Task 11. Put the verb in brackets into the present continuous tense or simple present tense.**

- What (make) \_\_\_\_\_ that terrible noise?
- What she (do) \_\_\_\_\_ in the evenings?

3. The last train (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ the station at 11 o'clock.

4. Lan (make) \_\_\_\_\_ a dress for herself now.

5. I am afraid I've broken one of your coffee cups.

Don't worry. I (not like) \_\_\_\_\_ that set anyway.

6. I (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ my sunglasses today because the sun is very strong.

**Task 12. Use the correct word form in parentheses**

- Be (care) \_\_\_\_\_ ! The car is coming.
- I were (nervously) \_\_\_\_\_ before the race started.
- I (phone) \_\_\_\_\_ you as soon as I arrive in Can Tho City.
- They (stop) \_\_\_\_\_ talking when I came in.
- It's difficult (find) \_\_\_\_\_ a comfortable flat here.

**Task 13. Sentences transformation**

- What was your former teacher like? – She was very nice.  
What \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- Trang enjoyed talking about her favourite sport.  
Trang was \_\_\_\_\_.
- My friend swims very well.  
My friend is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Tam is very young. He can't ride a motorbike.  
Tam is not \_\_\_\_\_.
- No one in my class more is beautiful than her.  
She is the \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 14. Choose the correct answer**

- I let you know as soon as I made my \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. decide      B. decided      C. decisive      D. decision
- It's difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ this problem.  
A. solve      B. solved      C. do      D. did
- The first Olympic games were held \_\_\_\_\_ Greece.  
A. on      B. in      C. at      D. from
- Congratulation \_\_\_\_\_ passing the exam!  
A. on      B. in      C. from      D. at
- Students \_\_\_\_\_ wear uniform when they go to school.  
A. have to      B. has to      C. should      D. had to



**Task 15. Complete the sentences with must or have to**

1. I'm afraid I can't go with you. I \_\_\_\_\_ learn for my next examination.
2. You \_\_\_\_\_ think over before deciding everything.
3. Tomorrow is our public holiday so we \_\_\_\_\_ go to school.
4. I'm a newcomer here so I \_\_\_\_\_ ask direction to everywhere.
5. You \_\_\_\_\_ put the sharp things out of children's reach.

**Task 16. Put the following words in right order**

1. By myself / I / to / everyday / go / school .
2. Let's / out / go / for / tonight / dinner.
3. The / right / side / there / of / the / room / in / is / a / wardrobe.
4. Parents' / obey / you / advice / must / your.
5. My boss / asks / restaurant / at / to meet / him / me / the.

**Task 17. Complete the following sentences with the suitable prepositions.**

1. I have been waiting \_\_\_\_\_ you for half an hour.
2. He is interested \_\_\_\_\_ your plan.
3. Do you believe \_\_\_\_\_ ghosts?
4. I have lived in Ho Chi Minh City \_\_\_\_\_ 1993.
5. I remember his name, but I can't think \_\_\_\_\_ his face.

**Task 18. Write the singular of the following nouns.**

- |          |            |           |            |
|----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. buses | 2. candies | 3. teeth  | 4. feet    |
| 5. deer  | 6. sheep   | 7. cities | 8. watches |

**Task 19. Combine the two sentences into one sentence without changing the meaning.**

1. She is very kind. Everyone loves her.  
She is \_\_\_\_\_.
2. They walked very quickly. I could not catch up with them.  
They walked \_\_\_\_\_.
3. It was very good coffee. I had another cup.  
It was \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Tam is not strong. He can't lift the heavy box.  
Tam \_\_\_\_\_.
5. She is very young. She can't get married.  
She \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 20. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences.**

1. Nobody has \_\_\_\_\_ done this before. (never / any / ever)
2. Is there an interesting film \_\_\_\_\_ the cinema today? (at / to / in)
3. If you're not careful, you'll hurt \_\_\_\_\_. (your/ you / yourself)
4. According \_\_\_\_\_ her, there is nothing to be done. (to / for / with)
5. It is the most beautiful building \_\_\_\_\_ the world. (in / on / of)

**Unit 4. OUR PAST**

**THỜI XA XƯA CỦA CHÚNG TA**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. The Past simple tense**

*Thì quá khứ đơn được dùng để diễn tả:*

**a. Một hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ và đã chấm dứt trong quá khứ.**

**Ex:** Lan bought some English books yesterday.

*Lan đã mua một số sách tiếng Anh vào ngày hôm qua.*

**b. Kể lại một câu chuyện cổ tích, câu chuyện thời thơ ấu.**

**Ex:** I lived in Can Tho until I was ten.

*Tôi đã sống ở Cần Thơ cho đến khi tôi được mười tuổi.*

Một số từ ngữ chỉ thời gian được dùng kèm với thì quá khứ đơn gồm có:

**once upon a time** ngày xưa ngày xưa

**last + time** (last night, last week, last year ...)

**yesterday** ngày hôm qua

**ago** cách đây (two days ago, two weeks ago ...)

**in + year** (xảy ra trước một thời điểm hiện tại) (in 1996, in 2005)

**\* Regular verbs and irregular verb:** Động từ hợp qui tắc và động từ bất qui tắc.

**c. Regular verbs**

Thì quá khứ đơn của những động từ hợp qui tắc được thành lập bằng cách thêm "**ed**" vào các động từ nguyên mẫu.

**Ex:** to stay – stayed (ở)



#### d. Irregular verbs

Thì quá khứ đơn của động từ bất qui tắc là ở cột thứ hai trong bảng bất qui tắc.

**Ex: to run – ran** (chạy)

**to leave – left** (ra đi, rời)

□ **Form:** Cách thành lập

\* **Affirmative form**

**S + verb<sub>ed</sub> / verb<sub>2</sub> + (object)**

**Ex:** I stayed at home last night.

*Tối hôm qua tôi ở nhà.*

I bought a new dress this morning.

*Sáng nay tôi đã mua chiếc áo đầm mới.*

\* **Negative form**

**S + didn't + verb + (object)**

**Ex:** I didn't stay at home yesterday.

*Hôm qua tôi không có ở nhà.*

\* **Interrogative form**

**Did + subject + verb + (object) ?**

**Ex:** Did you buy the book here yesterday?

*Hôm qua bạn có mua sách ở đây không?*

**Lưu ý:** - Các động từ hợp qui tắc tận cùng bằng “e” ta chỉ thêm “d”.

**Ex: to love – loved** (yêu)

- Khi một động từ có một âm tiết, có một nguyên âm đứng trước một phụ âm cuối, ta gấp đôi phụ âm này khi thêm **ed**.

**Ex: to stop – stopped** (ngừng)

**to plan – planed** (dự định)

- Các động từ tận cùng bằng “y” theo sau một phụ âm thì đổi “y” thành “i” trước khi thêm **ed**.

**Ex: to carry – carried** (mang)

Nhưng nếu theo sau “y” là một nguyên âm thì vẫn giữ nguyên.

**Ex: to play – played** (chơi, vui đùa)

**to enjoy – enjoyed** (thích, hưởng thức)

\* **Pronunciation of – ed** . Cách phát âm của – **ed**

▪ Có 3 cách phát âm “**ed**”:/d/;/t/;/ɪd/

– **ed** được phát âm là /ɪd/ khi nó theo sau động từ nguyên mẫu có âm tận cùng là: d và t

**Ex:** waited /'weɪtɪd/

invited /ɪn'vaɪtɪd/

– **ed** được phát âm là /t/ khi nó theo sau động từ nguyên mẫu có âm tận cùng là p, f, k, ch, s, sh, x.

**Ex:** missed /mɪst/

watched /wɒtʃt/

helped /helpt/

fixed /fɪkt/

– **ed** được phát âm là /d/ là những trường hợp còn lại ngoại trừ hai trường hợp trên.

**Ex:** played /pleɪd/

occurred /ə'kɜːrd/

studied /'stʌɪd/

#### 2. Preposition of time

##### a. In

\* **Được dùng để chỉ thời gian: Hạn định về thời gian, giới hạn về thời gian.**

**Ex:** I can run 50 meters in about 10 seconds.

*Tôi có thể chạy 50 mét trong mười giây.*

\* **In được dùng trong những giai đoạn kéo dài hơn như tuần lễ, tháng, năm, mùa, và thế kỷ.**

**Ex:** I was born in 1977.

*Tôi sinh vào năm 1977.*

\* **Sau khoảng thời gian mà ai đó đã trải qua.**

**Ex:** He lost a hand in the war.

*Ông ta đã bị mất một cánh tay trong chiến tranh.*



**b. At**

**\* Dùng để diễn tả thời gian chính xác khi điều gì đó xảy ra.**

**Ex:** At 5 o'clock.  
Vào lúc 5 giờ.  
The football game starts at 5 o'clock.  
Trận đấu bóng sẽ bắt đầu vào lúc 5 giờ.

**\* Dùng để diễn đạt điều gì đó xảy ra trong quá khứ.**

**at the time/at that time:** lúc đó

**Ex:** At that time, I lived with my grandmother.  
Vào lúc đó, tôi sống với bà tôi.

**\* Dùng trong một giai đoạn cụ thể nào đó, trước ngày cuối tuần, các ngày lễ công cộng trong năm.**

**at noon:** vào buổi trưa  
**at night:** ban đêm  
**at midnight:** lúc nửa đêm  
**at breakfast:** vào bữa ăn sáng  
**at lunch:** vào bữa ăn trưa  
**at sunrise = at dawn:** vào lúc bình minh  
**at sunset = at dusk:** vào lúc hoàng hôn  
**at the beginning of sth/at the start of sth:** đầu, lúc đầu  
**at the end of sth:** cuối, kết thúc  
**at weekends:** vào ngày cuối tuần  
**at Chirstmas:** vào ngày lễ Giáng sinh  
**at Thanksgiving:** vào ngày lễ Tạ ơn  
**at Easter:** vào ngày lễ Phục sinh

**c. After: sau khi**

**Ex:** She arrived just after breakfast.  
Cô ấy đã đến ngay sau khi ăn điểm tâm.

**d. Before: trước, trước khi**

**Ex:** Can I see you before eight o'clock / 8 a.m, Nga?  
Tôi có thể gặp bạn trước 8 giờ sáng không Nga?

**3. The use of Used to**

**Used to:** dùng để diễn đạt những hành động đã lặp đi lặp lại trong quá khứ nhưng bây giờ không còn nữa hoặc dùng để diễn tả sự so sánh giữa quá khứ và hiện tại.

**Ex:** I don't play soccer now, but I used to.  
Trước đây tôi thường chơi bóng đá nhưng bây giờ thì không.  
I used to live in Can Tho when I was a child .  
Khi tôi còn bé, tôi đã từng sống ở Cần Thơ.

Ngoài việc sử dụng **used to** để nói về thói quen trong quá khứ, chúng ta còn sử dụng **would**.

**Used to:** đã từng, thường, vốn  
**Would:** thường

**Ex:** When Lan was a child, she would go swimming at the weekends.  
Khi Lan còn nhỏ, cô ấy thường đi bơi vào ngày cuối tuần.

**\* Affirmative form**

**Subject + used to + verb**

**Ex:** I used to get up late.  
Trước đây tôi thường thức dậy trễ.

**\* Negative form**

**Subject + didn't use to + verb**

**Ex:** I didn't use to get up early.  
Trước đây, tôi không thường thức dậy sớm.

**\* Interrogative form**

**Did + subject + use to + verb?**

**Ex:** Did you use to get up early?  
Trước đây, bạn có thường thức dậy sớm không?  
Yes, I did.  
Có chứ.



## \* WH - Question

Where	} + did + subject + use to + verb?
What	
Who	

**Ex:** Where did you use to go to work?

*Trước đây bạn làm việc ở đâu?*

What did Thi use to do?

*Trước đây Thi làm nghề gì?*

**Lưu ý:** Nếu **who** hay **what** làm chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi, ta không dùng **did**.

**Ex:** Who used to live there?

*Trước kia ai sống ở đó.*

## 4. Revision

• Khi muốn hỏi đặc điểm của một cái gì hay một người nào đó trong quá khứ ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

What + was / were + S + like?
How + was / were + S ?

**Ex:** What was your house like last year?

*Nhà của bạn năm ngoái như thế nào?*

• Khi muốn hỏi một người nào đó hôm qua học môn gì ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

What subject + did + subject + have yesterday?
--

**Ex:** What subject did you have yesterday morning?

*Bạn đã học môn gì sáng hôm qua?*

## II. EXERCISES

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

- |                       |                     |                      |                    |
|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 0. A. <u>miss</u>     | B. <u>machine</u>   | C. <u>be</u>         | D. <u>police</u>   |
| 1. A. <u>appear</u>   | B. <u>annoy</u>     | C. <u>agree</u>      | D. <u>after</u>    |
| 2. A. <u>rug</u>      | B. <u>conduct</u>   | C. <u>Volunteer</u>  | D. <u>upset</u>    |
| 3. A. <u>generous</u> | B. <u>reserve</u>   | C. <u>festival</u>   | D. <u>message</u>  |
| 4. A. <u>escape</u>   | B. <u>equipment</u> | C. <u>excited</u>    | D. <u>emigrate</u> |
| 5. A. <u>graze</u>    | B. <u>magical</u>   | C. <u>gramophone</u> | D. <u>rag</u>      |

**Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                  |                |              |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. gr_at-g_an_ma | 2. _qu_p_en_   | 3. _olk t_le |
| 4. fo_lis_       | 5. _re_dy      | 6. d_ug_te_  |
| 7. _nfo_tu_ate_y | 8. f_rtu_ate_y | 9. cr_el     |
|                  |                | 10. _ps_t    |

**Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                |          |               |
|----------------|----------|---------------|
| 1. _ri_ce      | 2. f_ir_ | 3. a_pe_ra_ce |
| 4. _ag_ca_ly   | 5. ra_s  | 6. e_ca_e     |
| 7. _m_ed_atel_ | 8. g_az_ | 9. n_ar_y     |
|                |          | 10. s_rv_nt   |

**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |             |               |              |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. _isd_m   | 2. s_ra_      | 3. p_rfo_m's |
| 4. f_sti_al | 5. _ram_ph_ne | 6. _mb_el_as |
| 7. _ro_nd   | 8. _hurc_     | 9. _ag_zin_  |
|             |               | 10. _tr_pe   |

**Task 5. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct form.**

- I \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Lan's boyfriend last night. He's really cool.  
- I know. I \_\_\_\_\_ (like) him a lot.
- How was the Linda King concert last night?  
- She \_\_\_\_\_ (not, sing). She \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a sore throat.
- Why were you early for work today?  
- I \_\_\_\_\_ (not, ride) my bike. I \_\_\_\_\_ (take) the bus instead.
- \_\_\_\_\_ (you, read) the newspaper this morning?  
- No, I didn't. I never have time to \_\_\_\_\_ (read) before I go to work.
- How was the beach, Nga?  
- It was nice. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not, swim). We just \_\_\_\_\_ (sit) in the sun.

**Task 6. Write the correct form of each verb.**

Emily Carr, British Columbia's most famous artist, (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) born in 1871. Her parents (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (die) when she was still a teenager. She (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (study) art in San Francisco and Paris, but when she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (come) back to Victoria, she (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (keep) a house called "The House of All Sorts", where she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (be) the landlady. Many years later, she (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (begin) painting again. To find subjects for her paintings, she (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) trips into the forests of British Columbia, and she often (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) with the First Nations people and (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) them too. Emily Carr also (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (write) several books, and she (12) \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the Governor General's Award for one of them.



**Task 7. Fill the gaps with at, in, on, after or before.**

1. I hate doing the shopping \_\_\_\_\_ Saturdays.
2. She passed her driving test \_\_\_\_\_ March.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday mornings I have coffee and toast for breakfast and read the newspaper.
4. I hate going out \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend.
5. Brush your teeth \_\_\_\_\_ you go to bed.
6. It's ridiculous. The bank closes \_\_\_\_\_ 2:30 pm.
7. Jim had a terrible journey to Wales \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas Eve 2003.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ 1492 Columbus sailed the blue ocean.
9. Some people study best \_\_\_\_\_ eight but I prefer the morning.
10. You can play game \_\_\_\_\_ you finish your homework.

**Task 8. Write sentences using the words given to make questions.**

1. oranges / like / do / you  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
2. you / have / much / do / how / money  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
3. you / are / who  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
4. my / chocolate / did / eat / you  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
5. say / you / what / did  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
6. going / you / where / are  
→ \_\_\_\_\_
7. car / tonight / borrow / I / your / can  
→ \_\_\_\_\_

**Task 9. Put these sentences in the correct order, then practice with your partner.**

- |                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Did you enjoy it?              | 5. I went with my sister.        |
| 2. On Saturday afternoon.         | 6. What did you do last weekend? |
| 3. When did you go to the cinema? | 7. Who did you go with?          |
| 4. I went to the cinema.          | 8. Yes, I did.                   |

**Task 10. Complete the sentences, using the verb use**

1. When I was a child I \_\_\_\_\_ (use) go swimming in the lake.
2. In the army I \_\_\_\_\_ (use) get up at six every morning.
3. Anderlecht \_\_\_\_\_ (use) attract the best Belgian players. Nowadays they can't afford that any longer.
4. On holiday in Finland my wife \_\_\_\_\_ (use) take a sauna every day!
5. When he was a student, he \_\_\_\_\_ (use) play truant.

**Task 11. Put the verbs in brackets into the simple past tense**

1. I didn't have any money yesterday, so my roommate (lend) \_\_\_\_\_ me enough so I could pay for my lunch.
2. When Lan slipped on the icy sidewalk yesterday, she (fall) \_\_\_\_\_ down and (hurt) \_\_\_\_\_ her back. Her back is very painful today.
3. The children (draw) \_\_\_\_\_ pictures of themselves in art class yesterday.
4. I have a cold. Yesterday I (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ terrible, but I'm feeling better today.
5. I dropped my favourite vase. It fell on the floor and (break) \_\_\_\_\_ into a hundred pieces.

**Task 12. Put at, on, in, after, before, between to complete these sentences**

1. I was born in Can Tho \_\_\_\_\_ 1982.
2. I first were in Da Lat \_\_\_\_\_ 2001.
3. My birthday is \_\_\_\_\_ July.
4. I learn Japan at this center \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesday, Thursday and Saturday.
5. Do you work \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday afternoon?
6. I am going to Mui Ne \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesday.
7. I usually watch TV \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas, I often receive a lot of gifts.
9. You can hand in exercises \_\_\_\_\_ Monday and Thursday.
10. I usually do exercise \_\_\_\_\_ the morning.

**Task 13. Sentence transformation**

1. To go out at night is dangerous.  
It \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Nga dislikes travelling by plane.  
Nga isn't interested in \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He is a good actor  
He \_\_\_\_\_.



4. She looks young and beautiful.

She \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Because of her laziness, she failed in her exam.

Because she \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 14. Choose the correct answer**

1. She is in front of the mirror and looks at \_\_\_\_\_.

A. him      B. her      C. himself      D. herself

2. What's the matter \_\_\_\_\_ Lien? – She cuts \_\_\_\_\_.

A. to / herself      B. with / herself

C. at / herself      D. with / himself

3. There is a window \_\_\_\_\_ the right side of the room.

A. at      B. on      C. into      D. in

4. There \_\_\_\_\_ a table and four chairs in the living room.

A. is      B. are      C. am      D. were

5. Next to my house there \_\_\_\_\_ a bookstore.

A. is      B. are      C. am      D. were

**Task 15. Write the correct word form in brackets**

1. Don't worry, Nga ! I can look after everything (care) \_\_\_\_\_.

2. I want (come) \_\_\_\_\_ with my grandmother.

3. It is not safe (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ knives around the house.

4. His doctor advised him (not smoke) \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes.

5. In my University, students (have) \_\_\_\_\_ wear unifrom when they go to school.

**Task 16. Put the verbs in parentheses in the correct form.**

1. My father used to (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ me folktales when I was a child.

2. Our family moved to Ho Chi Minh last year. We used to (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in Can Tho.

3. He used to (smoke) \_\_\_\_\_ cigarettes, didn't he?

4. Life here is much easier than it used to (be) \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I used to (do) \_\_\_\_\_ everything by my hands.

**Task 17. Complete the following sentences with the suitable prepositions.**

1. This coffee smells \_\_\_\_\_ oil. (for, as, of)

2. She's laughing \_\_\_\_\_ him. (to / at / in)

3. Ottawa is \_\_\_\_\_ Canada. (to / in / on)

4. I'm tired \_\_\_\_\_ boiled eggs. (in / of / with)

5. It's time \_\_\_\_\_ our lesson to start. (for / of / in).

**Task 18. Fill in each blank with why, when, which or where.**

1. Do you remember the day \_\_\_\_\_ we first met?

2. This is a place \_\_\_\_\_ the accident happened.

3. That is the reason \_\_\_\_\_ I have to quit the job.

4. Hung works for a company \_\_\_\_\_ makes coffee.

5. I always remember the day \_\_\_\_\_ he left for Canada.

**Task 19. Put the word in the right order to make a sentence.**

1. Tuyet / used / live / in / Can Tho / when / she / small girl.

2. My sister / TV / sitting rom/ the / at / moment / is / watching / in / the.

3. the / most / is / this / vacation / enjoyable / we / ever / had / have.

4. We / going / to / are / tomorrow / Hue / the / festival / to / celebrate / friends / our / with.

5. I / not / am / tomorrow / working / so / go / we / can / somewhere.

**Task 20. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital.**

1. She fell off the bike, but her \_\_\_\_\_ were not serious. **INJURE**

2. You must read the following \_\_\_\_\_ precautions carefully. **SAFE**

3. I receive a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ from my parents. **COURAGE**

4. The children should be punished because of their bad \_\_\_\_\_ **BEHAVE**

5. My parents are very \_\_\_\_\_ of me. **PRIDE**

**Unit 5. STUDY HABITS**

**THÓI QUEN TRONG HỌC TẬP**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Adverbs of manner**

*Trạng từ chỉ thể cách* cho biết hành động được thể hiện bằng cách nào.

*Trạng từ chỉ thể cách* được sử dụng để bổ nghĩa cho động từ.

*Trạng từ chỉ thể cách* thường được thành lập bằng cách thêm -ly vào tính từ.

Adjective + ly = adverb



**Ex: bad – badly**

**soft – softly**

\* Một số trường hợp ngoại lệ:

**fast – fast**

**far – far**

**straight – straight**

**good – well**

**hard – hard**

**late – late**

**early – early**

▪ Vị trí của trạng từ chỉ thể cách: thường đứng sau động từ để bổ nghĩa cho động từ đó.

**Ex: She talks quickly.**

*Cô ấy nói nhanh.*

▪ Khi động từ trong câu có “túc từ” đi theo, trạng từ đứng sau túc từ đó để bổ nghĩa cho động từ.

**Ex: She sings this song beautifully.**

*Cô ấy hát bài hát này rất hay.*

## 2. Modal verb: should

Động từ tình thái **should** được dùng để diễn đạt một lời đề nghị, lời khuyên, sự bắt buộc hoặc bổn phận.

**Ex: You shouldn't spend too much money on clothes.**

*Bạn không nên tiêu phí quá nhiều tiền bạc vào quần áo.*

*We should have a party to celebrate her birthday.*

*Chúng ta nên tổ chức tiệc mừng sinh nhật cho cô ấy.*

*They should inform the receptionist of their arrival.*

*Họ phải báo trước cho tiếp tân biết việc họ đến.*

**Lưu ý:** Trong câu hỏi, ta dùng **should** để xin lời khuyên hay sự chỉ dẫn.

**Ex: Should I go and see him? Tôi có nên đến gặp anh ta không?**

*What should I do now? Bây giờ tôi nên làm gì?*

## 3. Imperatives

- Câu mệnh lệnh được dùng để bảo ai, ra lệnh cho ai làm điều gì đó. Chủ từ **you** trong câu mệnh lệnh được hiểu ngầm.

- Động từ trong câu mệnh lệnh ở dạng nguyên mẫu.

\* **Cách thành lập:**

### a. Affirmative imperative

Câu mệnh lệnh khẳng định bắt đầu bằng một động từ nguyên mẫu không **to** (bare infinitive without to) hay bắt đầu bằng **be** và theo sau là một tính từ.

**Verb + (object / adv) !**

**Be + (adj) !**

(Hãy, phải...)

**Ex: Close the door.**

*Hãy đóng cửa lại.*

*Let him go.*

*Hãy để cho hắn đi.*

*Take care.*

*Hãy bảo trọng.*

*Be quiet, please!*

*Xin vui lòng giữ im lặng.*

*Be a good girl!*

*Hãy là một cô bé tốt.*

*Turn off the light, please.*

*Xin vui lòng tắt đèn.*

Để làm dịu phần nào ý nghĩa nặng nề của câu mệnh lệnh, người ta thường dùng **please** ở đầu câu hoặc cuối câu.

### b. Negative imperative

Câu mệnh lệnh phủ định được thành lập bằng cách thêm **Don't** trước động từ nguyên mẫu.

**Don't + verb + (object / adverb).**

**Don't be + (adj) !**

(Cấm, không, đừng, chớ...)



Ex: **Don't** stay up late.

*Đừng thức khuya.*

**Don't** be lazy.

*Đừng lười biếng.*

**\* Ý nghĩa và cách dùng thể mệnh lệnh.**

**a. Commands (Ra lệnh)**

Ex: Turn off the lights when you go out.

*Hãy tắt đèn khi bạn đi ra ngoài.*

**b. Requests (Yêu cầu)**

Ex: Please come early.

*Xin vui lòng đến sớm.*

**c. Offers (Mời mọc)**

Ex: Have another piece of cake.

*Bạn dùng thêm miếng bánh nữa nhé.*

**d. Warn (Cảnh báo)**

Ex: Beware of the dog!

*Coi chừng chó dữ!*

**e. Directions (Chỉ dẫn đường đi)**

Ex: Go straight ahead two blocks and turn left.

*Đi thẳng về phía trước hai dãy phố rồi quẹo trái.*

**f. Signs (Báo hiệu)**

Ex: Please keep off the grass.

*Xin đừng giẫm lên cỏ.*

**g. Advice (lời khuyên)**

Ex: You're sick. Go to bed early.

*Bạn đang bệnh. Hãy đi ngủ sớm đi.*

**4. Commands, requests, and advice in reported speech.**

**a. Giới thiệu sơ lược về lời nói trực tiếp và lời nói gián tiếp.**

**• Direct speech (Lời nói trực tiếp)**

Chúng ta sử dụng lời nói trực tiếp khi chúng ta muốn lặp lại nguyên văn của một người nào đó.

**• Indirect speech or Reported speech (Lời nói gián tiếp hay còn gọi là lời tường thuật)**

Chúng ta sử dụng lời nói gián tiếp khi chúng ta dùng từ ngữ của mình để tường thuật lại điều mà người nào đó nói.

Muốn đổi câu mệnh lệnh, yêu cầu và đề nghị từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp, chúng ta phải thay đổi chủ từ, động từ và trạng từ chỉ thời gian hay địa điểm.

• Động từ tường thuật thường được dùng là:

**ordered = commanded:** ra lệnh

**asked = requested:** yêu cầu

**begged:** nài nỉ

**told:** bảo

Ex<sub>1</sub>: **Direct:** The teacher said to the students: "sit down"

**Indirect:** The teacher told the student **to sit down**.

Ex<sub>2</sub>: **Direct:** The teacher said to the students, "Don't look at your books!"

**Indirect:** The teacher told the students **not to look** at **their** books.

**5. Revision**

\* Khi chúng ta muốn xin phép ai làm điều gì, ta có thể dùng cấu trúc sau:

**May I ...? Tôi có thể...?**

Ex: May I sit here?

*Tôi có thể ngồi ở đây không?*

\* Khi muốn hỏi hành động thường xuyên xảy ra như thế nào, ta dùng:

**How often ...?**

Ex: How often do you go out?

*Bạn đi chơi thường cỡ nào?*

*Twice a week.*

*Mỗi tuần hai lần.*

**II. EXERCISES**

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

- |                      |                   |                     |                  |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 0. A. <u>miss</u>    | B. <u>machine</u> | C. <u>be</u>        | D. <u>police</u> |
| 1. A. <u>house</u>   | B. <u>hour</u>    | C. <u>how</u>       | D. <u>horse</u>  |
| 2. A. <u>natural</u> | B. <u>nature</u>  | C. <u>native</u>    | D. <u>nation</u> |
| 3. A. <u>bread</u>   | B. <u>death</u>   | C. <u>clean</u>     | D. <u>threat</u> |
| 4. A. <u>meat</u>    | B. <u>great</u>   | C. <u>teach</u>     | D. <u>reach</u>  |
| 5. A. <u>pleased</u> | B. <u>raised</u>  | C. <u>practiced</u> | D. <u>closed</u> |



- Task 2. Change ( ) with the lettes to make the complete words.**
- |            |                   |                |
|------------|-------------------|----------------|
| 1. h_bi_   | 2. _ep_rt         | 3. _xce_le_t   |
| 4. p_ou_   | 5. fi_st s_me_ter | 6. _mpr_vem_nt |
| 7. _pa_ish | 8. _ron_nci_tio_  | 9. b_ha_ior    |
|            |                   | 10. _eli_ve    |

- Task 3. Change ( ) with the lettes to make the complete words.**
- |                  |                  |                 |
|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. _ro_ise       | 2. _ame a_ros_   | 3. _o-op_rati_n |
| 4. _at_sfa_to_y  | 5. _ar_icip_tion | 6. _eani_g      |
| 7. _ot_er t_ng_e | 8. sti_k         | 9. f_ir         |
|                  |                  | 10. _nde_lin_   |

- Task 4. Change ( ) with the lettes to make the complete words.**
- |              |                |              |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. _ig_lig_t | 2. _evi_e      | 3. _ece_sa_y |
| 4. lu_ar     | 5. _ore t_ro_t | 6. _epl_nt   |
| 7. _om_ent   | 8. _lo_d       | 9. co_ma_d   |
|              |                | 10. be_ge_   |

- Task 5. Choose a word in brackets to fill the gaps.**
- They dance the cha-cha-cha \_\_\_\_\_. (beautiful / beautifully)
  - She planned their trip to Greece very \_\_\_\_\_. (careful I carefully)
  - Jim painted the kitchen very \_\_\_\_\_. (bad / badly)
  - She speaks very \_\_\_\_\_. (quiet / quietly)
  - He skipped \_\_\_\_\_ down the road to school. (happy / happily)
  - He drives too \_\_\_\_\_. (fast / well)
  - She knows the road \_\_\_\_\_. (good / well)
  - He plays the guitar \_\_\_\_\_. (terrible / terribly)
  - Andy doesn't often work \_\_\_\_\_. (hard/ hardly)
  - Sometimes our teacher arrives \_\_\_\_\_ for class. (late/ lately)

- Task 6. Complete the sentences with a suitable preposition.**
- She is a beautiful girl ..... Hong black hair.
  - The post office is not far ..... my house.
  - People all ..... the world speak English.
  - Did you speak ..... the teacher ..... the homework?
  - New Year's Day is one week ..... Christmas.
  - We arrive ..... the air port ..... New York ..... 5 am.
  - He arrived .....the city ..... an early morning.
  - Here's the postman ..... a letter ..... you.
  - How do you know .....George Washington?
  - My family left ..... London 3 years ago.

- Task 7. Underline the correct form of the verbs to complete these sentences.**
- The police managed *catch/ to catch/ catching* the burglar.
  - My parents let me *open/ to open/ opening* my birthday present.
  - I tried *stop/ to stop/ stopping* her but she ran away.
  - Would you like *drink/ to drink/ drinking* something?
  - They go *ski/ to ski/ skiing* every winter.
  - It was wonderful *see/ to see/ seeing* you again.
  - I started *learn/ to learn / learning* Chinese when I was at University.
  - He didn't have anything *say/ to say/ saying*.
  - I never know when *shut up/ to shut up/ shutting up*. I'm sorry.
  - I've decided *marry/ to marry/ marrying* Helen.

- Task 8. Use the suggestions to make the meaningful sentences from a letter.**
- I/ be/ very surprised/get/ letter.  
.....
  - I/ not know/you/ back / London.  
.....
  - You have/ good time/ New York?  
.....
  - I/ look forward/ hear/ all about it.  
.....
  - Thank you/ invite/ me/ dinner/ next weekend.  
.....
  - I/ afraid/ not able/ come/ Sunday.  
.....
  - But I/ be/ free/ following weekend.  
.....
  - Why/ you call me/ next few days.  
.....



**Task 9. Write a letter to your friend, David (use the words given).**

Dear David,

1. when/we/meet/last/we/talk about/ our gardens.  
.....

2. You/ tell/ me/ you/ often grow/ roses/ your garden.  
.....

3. Well/ I/ buy/ half/dozen/ rose plants/last November.  
.....

4. Four/ these/grow/good/ at present.  
.....

5. But/ I/ very/worry/about/other two.  
.....

6. These/ be/ first/ roses/ I/ ever grow.  
.....

7. I/very/much/like/ have/ your advice/them.  
.....

8. You/come/ see/ them/ this weekend/ next?  
.....

**Task 10. Rewrite these sentences with the suggestions so that the meanings are unchanged.**

1. Mrs. Lan told the children to stop making noise.

Mrs. Lan said: "....."

2. Quang said to his sister: "Try your best at school."

Quang told .....

3. Minh asked: "Could you help me with English?"

Minh requested Ba.....

4. He told his son not to watch TV any more.

He said to his son: " ....., "

5. It was so late that nothing could be done.

It was too .....

6. "I don't think John will come" said Bill.

Bill doubted .....

7. "Why don't you put a Hock on the door, Barry?" Said John.

John advised .....

8. "How Hong has it been since you left this city, Bob?" He said

He wanted to know .....

9. Joan doesn't like to read the stories she has written.

Joan isn't fond of .....

**Task 11. Turn into reported speech in commands, requests or advice.**

1. He advises me: "Listen to English cassette about 15 minutes every day".

2. The policeman ordered the man: "Please give me your driving license".

3. Kim said to me: "Please wait for me a few minutes".

4. I said to my sister: "Lend me your Japanese book for a moment".

5. She said : "Don't play football in the street, boys".

**Task 12. Choose the right answer**

1. My boss asks me \_\_\_\_\_ this report right now.

A. to type    B. type    C. typing    D. write

2. Everybody at the meeting agreed \_\_\_\_\_ his opinion.

A. to    B. from    C. at    D. on

3. I'm proud \_\_\_\_\_ you, Nga? I know you worked really hard this semester.

A. on    B. in    C. about    D. of

4. I'm bored \_\_\_\_\_ living here. It's very noisy.

A. with    B. to    C. of    D. from

5. Vietnamese is different \_\_\_\_\_ English.

A. from    B. in    C. by    D. of

6. Nowadays young people prefer \_\_\_\_\_ in the city.

A. live    B. work    C. worked    D. to work

7. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ a call to Singapore

A. made    B. make    C. making    D. to make

8. Don't let him \_\_\_\_\_ that

A. knew    B. to know    C. knowing    D. know

**Task 13. Put the words in the right order to make a sentence**

1. I / to / hear / that / pleased / am / you / passed / examination / your.

2. She / me / told / her / learn / English / to / show / how / to.

3. He / good / at / English / bad / at / is / but / math.

4. My / sister / me / told / to / again / call / again / at / 8 o'clock / her.



5. He / told / to / Lan / call / him / soon.
6. My father / me / late / told / not / to / stay / up.
7. The / taxi / told / the / Thuy / driver / follow / to / the / black / car.
8. I / holiday / with / my / cousins / have / just / a / had / wonderful / in / Nha Trang.

**Task 14. Complete the dialogues with the simple past tense**

1. A: You (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ well last night?  
B: Yes, I (do) \_\_\_\_\_. I (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ very well.
2. A: You (have) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast this morning?  
B: No, I (do not) \_\_\_\_\_. I (have not) \_\_\_\_\_ enough time.  
I was late for class because my alarm clock (ring, not) \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A: You (read) \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper this morning?  
B: No, I (do not) \_\_\_\_\_. I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ no time.
4. A: You (stay) \_\_\_\_\_ home last night?  
B: No, I (do not) \_\_\_\_\_. I went to the cinema.
5. A: Last midnight a thief (break) \_\_\_\_\_ into my neighbor's house and (steal) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of things.  
B: So we have to key our house carefully.

**Task 15. Rewrite the sentences. Use imperatives**

- You want your friend to open the door.  
→ Open the door, please.
1. You want your friend to shut the door.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. You want your friend to open the fan.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. You don't want your younger sister to make noise.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.
  4. You don't want your son to stay up late.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.
  5. You want your younger sister to wash her hands before having lunch.  
→ \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 16. Translate into English**

1. Bạn làm gì để trau dồi môn tiếng Anh của mình?
2. Cô Lan là cô giáo dạy tôi tiếng Anh năm ngoái.
3. Con nên hoàn tất bài tập trước khi xem ti vi.
4. Tôi có thể vào được không?
5. Thầy giáo tiếng Anh của tôi khuyên tôi nên học tiếng Anh 30 phút mỗi ngày.

**Task 17. Choose the suitable preposition to complete the following sentences.**

1. He felt annoyed \_\_\_\_\_ me. (with / of / to)
2. Does this pen belong \_\_\_\_\_ you? (in / at / to)
3. My younger sister is very fond \_\_\_\_\_ chocolate. (in / on / of)
4. You're are very good \_\_\_\_\_ explaining everything. (on / in / at)
5. I am interested \_\_\_\_\_ reading English book. (of / in / at)

**Task 18. Write the plural of the following nouns.**

- |          |           |          |            |
|----------|-----------|----------|------------|
| 1. tooth | 2. family | 3. mouse | 4. country |
| 5. Thuy  | 6. fish   | 7. sheep | 8. fan     |

**Task 19. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences.**

1. This pencil is not good. Please take it and give me \_\_\_\_\_ (another one / other one / one another)
2. Do you like my new shirt? It's \_\_\_\_\_. (a new one / new one)
3. Phuong doesn't like coffee, \_\_\_\_\_ does Hong. (neither/ either)
4. I went to sleep \_\_\_\_\_ the concert. (while / for / during)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you work harder, you won't be able to pass the exam. (Since / Unless / If)

**Task 20. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital.**

1. Our life is much better with the help of modern \_\_\_\_\_. **EQUIP**
2. She was \_\_\_\_\_ to say that. **FOOL**
3. You shouldn't talk about her character only through her \_\_\_\_\_. **APPEAR**
4. She works for a \_\_\_\_\_ bank in Ha Noi. **NATION**
5. Fruit juices and milk are \_\_\_\_\_ drinks, aren't they? **HEALTH**



## HỘI THIẾU NIÊN TIỀN PHONG

## I. GRAMMAR

## 1. Modals: Can, Could, Will, Would, May

**Can, Could, Will, Would, May** có thể dùng để yêu cầu nhờ ai giúp đỡ.

- Trong cách nói thân mật muốn nhờ ai giúp đỡ ta có thể sử dụng

**Can, Could, Will, Would.**

**Ex:** Would you (please) do me a favor?

*Bạn làm ơn giúp đỡ tôi được không?*

Can you (please) do me a favor?

*Bạn làm ơn giúp đỡ tôi được không?*

- Nhưng trong cách nói trang trọng, ta sử dụng **May**

**Ex:** May I see your ticket, please?

*Anh chị vui lòng cho tôi xem vé!*

- Can, Could, May** còn có thể được dùng để xin phép.

**Ex:** May I borrow your pen?

*Tôi có thể mượn cây viết của bạn được không?*

Yes, you may. *Vâng, bạn có thể.*

No, you may not. *Không, bạn không thể mượn.*

☐ **Khi đồng ý ta có thể trả lời những cách sau:**

**ok, sure, yes, go right ahead, certainly.**

**Ex:** Could you help me with this exercise, Mr. Nam?

\_ Sure.

\_ Sorry, but I'm busy now.

*Ông có thể giúp tôi làm bài tập này không, ông Nam?*

\_ À, được chứ.

\_ Xin lỗi/Ồ tiếc thật. Giờ tôi đang bận.

☐ **Khi không đồng ý ta có những cách trả lời sau:**

**no way**

**sorry, but...**

**no, certainly not**

**absolutely not**

## 2. Present simple tense with future meaning

Ta dùng thì **hiện tại đơn** mang ý nghĩa tương lai khi **nói về** thời gian biểu, chương trình, lịch trình (đối với **lịch chiếu phim, các phương tiện vận chuyển công cộng**)

**Ex:** The football match starts at 5 p.m.

*Trận bóng bắt đầu vào lúc năm giờ chiều.*

The plane takes off at 3 o'clock this afternoon.

*Máy bay cất cánh vào lúc 3 giờ chiều nay.*

The movie starts at 7.20 p.m and finishes at 9 p.m.

*Bộ phim sẽ bắt đầu vào lúc 7 giờ 20 và kết thúc vào lúc 9 giờ.*

**Lưu ý:** Chúng ta có thể sử dụng thì hiện tại đối với những sự việc đã được sắp xếp sẵn như thời khóa biểu.

**Ex:** I finish work at 5 p.m and meet him at 5.20 p.m.

*Tôi kết thúc công việc vào lúc 5 giờ và gặp anh ta vào lúc 5 giờ 20.*

## 3. The Gerund

Dạng thức thêm **-ing** vào phía sau động từ được sử dụng như danh từ được gọi là danh động từ (Gerund).

**to go - going**

**to think - thinking**

## a. Usage

Một danh động từ đơn có thể được dùng như là một danh từ, một tính từ, một trạng từ.

- \* Một danh động từ đóng vai trò như là một danh từ.**

**Ex:** The beginning of the year: đầu năm

- \* Một danh động từ đóng vai trò như tính từ.**

**Ex:** Drinking water : nước uống

- \* Một danh động từ đóng vai trò như trạng từ.**

**Ex:** Soaking wet: ướt sũng

## b. Chức năng

- \* Làm chủ từ của câu**

**Ex:**

Chủ từ (subject) ← **Smoking** is harmful for your health.

*Hút thuốc có hại cho sức khỏe.*



c. Đứng sau giới từ, làm tân ngữ cho giới từ.

Ex: She is fond of dancing. → Giới từ + V-ing (đứng sau giới từ)  
Cô ấy thích khiêu vũ.

d. Tân ngữ trực tiếp của những động từ: avoid, begin, consider, continue, enjoy, finish, hate, like, love, mind, prefer, suggest, stop...

Ex: She enjoys teaching.

Cô ấy thích dạy học.

e. Danh động từ có thể đặt trước một danh từ để tạo thành một danh từ kép.

Ex: a parking lot: bãi đậu xe

f. Có thể làm túc từ cho sở hữu cách hoặc sở hữu tính từ.

Ex: Thank you for your coming here.

Cảm ơn các bạn đã đến đây.

g. Làm bổ ngữ (complement) cho các động từ be, become, get, sound ...

Ex: My hobby is dancing.

Sở thích của tôi là khiêu vũ. (Tôi thích khiêu vũ.)

## II. EXERCISES

Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?

1. A. character B. architect C. chair D. chemist
2. A. arranges B. makes C. finishes D. sentences
3. A. raised B. closed C. missed D. pleased
4. A. promise B. polite C. admire D. retire
5. A. moved B. disguised C. imprisoned D. packed

Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. y\_u\_g pi\_ne\_r
2. y\_u\_h or\_an\_zati\_n
3. \_ar\_ici\_ate
4. b\_in\_
5. \_an\_ica\_ped
6. \_nr\_ll
7. \_pplic\_tio\_
8. pa\_sp\_rt
9. \_o\_by
10. of\_e\_

Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. \_ssis\_an\_e
2. \_eso\_rce
3. \_iti\_ensh\_p
4. \_nc\_ura\_em\_nt
5. \_itn\_ss
6. \_lth\_ug\_
7. c\_edu\_atio\_
8. \_orl\_wid\_
9. \_olu\_ta\_y
10. \_co\_t

Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. \_tre\_t c\_ildr\_n
2. \_oa\_ing w\_t
3. \_ecy\_le
4. \_ide\_alk
5. \_egi\_ter
6. s\_pp\_rt
7. \_oun\_ati\_n
8. a\_m
9. c\_nsi\_er
10. s\_gg\_st

Task 5. Complete the sentences with a form of can, could, or be able to. Some of the sentences are negative.

1. In her country you can get married when you're sixteen.
2. Speak up! I can't hear you!
3. Can I borrow your dictionary?
4. I'd love to help you, but I can't. I'm sorry.
5. I could get into my house last night because I'd lost my key.
6. Women could vote in England until 1922.
7. I'm learning Spanish because I want to speak to people when I'm in Mexico.
8. The doctor says I can walk again in two weeks' time.
9. I asked the teacher if I could open the window, but she said I couldn't because it would be too noisy.
10. I'm sorry, but I can't come to your party next week.

Task 6. Choose the most suitable word or phrase to complete each sentence by circling the letter a, b, c or d.

1. You can't tell what some one is like just from their .....  
A. character B. appearance C. personality D. Looking
2. I was born in Scotland but I ..... in Northern Ireland.  
A. grew up B. raised C. brought up D. rose
3. My father likes to be called a senior citizen, not an old age .....  
A. person B. relative C. gentleman D. pensioner
4. Is Brenda married or ..... I don't like to ask her.  
A. spinster B. alone C. bachelor D. single
5. I got to ..... Steve well last year when we worked together.  
A. introduce B. know C. meet D. sympathy
6. Parents have to try hard to understand the younger.....  
A. generation B. people C. adolescent D. teenagers



**Task 7. Open the brackets with the correct form of the verbs.**

1. This book is easy (read) .....
2. I'm pleased (see) .....you to stop smoking.
3. He is fond of (listen) ..... to music.
4. I don't know how (cook) ..... this food.
5. I usually see them (play) ..... football there.
6. I saw them (play) ..... football here yesterday.
7. He usually goes (camp) .....with his friends in the summer.
8. He likes (draw) ..... pictures in his free time.

**Task 8. Make offers with I will for the following situations.**

Ex: 1. It's so hot in this room.

I'll open the window.

2. I'm dying for a drink.

→ .....

3. There's someone at the door.

→ .....

4. I don't have any money.

→ .....

5. I need to be at the station in ten minutes.

→ .....

6. My suitcases are so heavy.

→ .....

**Task 9. Match the base adjectives in column A with the appropriate strong adjectives in column B.**

**A**

1. good
2. bad
3. cold
4. frightened
5. funny
6. tasty
7. angry
8. tired

**B**

- a. enormous, huge
- b. boiling
- c. exhausted
- d. freezing
- e. delicious
- f. fascinating
- g. horrid, horrible, awful, terrible, disgusting
- h. perfect, marvelous, wonderful, fantastic

9. pretty

10. large

11. interesting

12. hot

13. surprised

14. clever

15. dirty

- i. filthy

- j. astonished, amazed

- k. furious

- l. hilarious

- m. terrified

- n. beautiful

- o. brilliant

**Task 10. Complete the dialogues using a form of will or going to, and any other necessary words. Sometimes both future forms are possible.**

1. - Why are you wearing your old clothes?  
- Because I'm going to wash the car.
2. - I've got a headache. Have you got any aspirin?  
- Yes, it's in the bathroom. I    it for you.
3. - Don't forget to tell me if I can help you.  
- Thank you. I    a ring if I think of anything.
4. - Why are you making sandwiches?  
- Because we    a picnic on the beach.
5. - I'm going now! Bye!  
- Bye! What time    you    tonight?
6. - Who do you think win the next election?  
- The Labor Party    win, definitely.
7. - You still owe me ten pounds. Have you forgotten?  
- I'm sorry. Yes, I'd forgotten. I    back tomorrow.

**Task 11. Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Present continuous tense or Present simple tense.**

1. Excuse me. What time the plane (take off)?  
It (take)    off in an hour.
2. The train (leave)    at 10.30 tomorrow?  
No, it (leave)    at 11.30.
3. Why you (put)    on your coat?  
I (go)    to the supermarket. You (come)    with me?  
Yes, I'd love to.
4. I have a cold. Yesterday I felt terrible, but I (feel)    better today.
5. My friend (come)    to our apartment for dinner tonight.



**Task 12. Arrange these words into the right order**

- Where / live / you / do / and / do / you / a / have / phone / number?
- Please / form / take / this / teacher / to / your / and / ask / her / sign / to / in.
- How / long / lived / have / you / there?
- I / drawing / like / and / I / enjoy / acting / too.
- Turn / when / you / get out of / the / hotel / right.

**Task 13. Translate into English**

- Tôi thích nghe nhạc. Lan thích đọc sách.
- Xin bạn vui lòng tắt đèn khi ra khỏi phòng.
- Họ phải tốn nhiều thời gian hơn cho việc học tiếng Anh.
- Cửa hiệu đó khai trương vào tháng trước.
- Tôi không biết Lan ở đâu. Cô ấy có thể ở nhà.

**Task 14. Complete the dialogues to ask for favors or to offer assistance**

- A: Can you do me a favor?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ (open / the window)  
B: Certainly.
- A: Could you do me a favour?  
B: How \_\_\_\_\_?  
A: \_\_\_\_\_ (turn down / the radio)  
B: Certainly.
- A: Let me help you?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (take / these dirty dishes into the kitchen?)  
A: Sure.  
B: Thanks a lot.

**Task 15. Choose the correct answer**

- \_\_\_\_\_ do you go fishing?  
A. How often  
B. How long  
C. How much  
D. How many
- I go to school \_\_\_\_\_ bicycle.  
A. in  
B. by  
C. on  
D. at

- \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday I go to English club.

A. on      B. in      C. at      D. by

- I live \_\_\_\_\_ my father in Ha Noi.

A. with      B. in      C. to      D. at

- I am good \_\_\_\_\_ math, but bad at Literature.

A. to      B. in      C. by      D. at

**Task 16. Complete the dialogues. Use the adverbs of manner in the box**

softly	well	fast	badly
--------	------	------	-------

- Hong : Ba always gets excellent grades.

Nga: That's because he studies \_\_\_\_\_.

- Hong: That's our bus!

Nga : Run \_\_\_\_\_ and we might catch it.

- Hong : I'm very sorry. I know I behaved \_\_\_\_\_.

Nga : It's all right.

- Hong: I can't hear you, Nga.

Lan : Sorry, but I'm speaking \_\_\_\_\_ because I have a sore throat.

**Task 17. Fill in the blanks with "some or any"**

- There are \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful flowers in the garden.
- They haven't got \_\_\_\_\_ children.
- When we were on holiday, we visited \_\_\_\_\_ very interesting places.
- There are a lot of shoes in this shop. \_\_\_\_\_ are very expensive, some are cheap.
- If you don't have \_\_\_\_\_ questions to ask me, we can stop here.

**Task 18. Choose the suitable prepositions to complete the following sentences.**

- Selfish people only care \_\_\_\_\_ themselves. (over / by / about)
- They never thought \_\_\_\_\_ it again. (for / at / about)
- I am sitting \_\_\_\_\_ my father and my mother. (between / to / at)
- I am good \_\_\_\_\_ Mathematics. (at / in / on)
- I am bad \_\_\_\_\_ Literature. (at / in / on)



**Task 19. Rewrite the sentences without changing the meaning**

1. She failed in the exam because of her laziness.  
Because \_\_\_\_\_.
2. I had a dog once, but I don't any more.  
I used \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The front yard is too small for children to play soccer in.  
The front yard \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Would you like me to help you?  
I'll \_\_\_\_\_.
5. You don't need to set off early.  
It is \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 20. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital.**

1. Her \_\_\_\_\_ makes everybody admire. **BEAUTIFUL**
2. We accept your kind \_\_\_\_\_ with pleasure. **INVITE**
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ the piano every day. **PRACTICE**
4. This is the best book that I have read \_\_\_\_\_. **LATE**
5. The baby is \_\_\_\_\_. Please don't make any noise. **SLEEP**

**Unit 7. MY NEIGHBORHOOD**

**KHU PHỐ TÔI**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Present perfect tense with For and Since**

**a. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành dùng để diễn tả một hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ không xác định rõ thời gian.**

**Ex:** She has bought that English book.

*Cô ấy đã mua cuốn sách tiếng Anh đó.*

**b. Một hành động được lặp đi lặp lại nhiều lần trong quá khứ.**

**Ex:** I have seen this movie four times.

*Tôi đã xem phim này bốn lần rồi.*

**c. Một hành động đã hoàn tất, nhưng kết quả của hành động còn ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại.**

**Ex:** He's lost his bicycle; he has to walk to school.

*Anh ấy đã mất chiếc xe đạp, anh ấy phải đi bộ đến trường.*

**d. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành dùng với just để chỉ một hành động vừa xong. (vừa mới xảy ra xong)**

**Ex:** He has just left home.

*Anh ấy vừa mới rời khỏi nhà.*

**e. Một hành động bắt đầu trong quá khứ và vẫn còn kéo dài cho đến hiện tại. (thường dùng với since và for)**

**Ex:** I have had that television since 1993.

*Tôi có cái ti vi đó từ năm 1993.*

\* Những trạng từ thường được dùng trong thì hiện tại hoàn thành: **ever, already, just, yet, still, so far = up to now** (mãi đến bây giờ), **once, twice, three times, a few minutes, many times.**

\* Những trạng từ như **ever, never, already** thường đứng trước quá khứ phân từ.

\* Những trạng từ như **yet, once, twice, three times, a few minutes, several times, many times, so far, already** thường đứng cuối câu.

\* Trạng từ **so far** cũng có thể đứng đầu câu.

\* Trạng từ **still** thường đứng trước động từ **have** và **has**.

⊗ Đối với **since**:

**since + a point of time** (Since đi với một điểm thời gian)

**Ex:** She has lived in Ho Chi Minh City since 1996.

*Cô ấy đã sống ở thành phố Hồ Chí Minh từ năm 1996.*

**since + S + V**

**S + have / has + V<sub>3</sub> + since + S + V<sub>2</sub>**

**Ex:** She has lived in Ho Chi Minh City since she was 18.

*Cô ấy sống ở thành phố Hồ Chí Minh từ khi lên 18.*

⊗ Đối với **for**:

**Lưu ý:** dùng **for + period of time** trong quá khứ đơn.

**Ex:** Last year, I went on holiday in Da Lat. I stayed there for one week.

*Năm ngoái tôi đi du lịch ở Đà Lạt. Tôi ở đó một tuần lễ.*



## Cách thành lập thì hiện tại hoàn thành

### a. Affirmative form

**S + have / has + verb<sub>(3)</sub>**

**Ex:** I have seen this before.

*Trước đây tôi đã thấy cái này rồi.*

### b. Negative form

**S + have not/has not + verb<sub>(3)</sub>/ (ed)**

**Ex:** I have not seen this movie before.

*Trước đây tôi chưa xem phim này.*

### c. Interrogative form

**Have/Has + subject + verb<sub>(3)</sub>/ (ed)?**

**Ex:** Have you seen this movie before?

*Trước đây bạn đã xem phim này chưa?*

Yes, I have.

*Vâng, tôi đã xem rồi.*

No, I haven't.

*Chưa, tôi vẫn chưa xem.*

### □ Wh- questions with present perfect

**Wh – have/has + subject + verb<sub>(3)</sub>/ (ed) ?**

**Ex:** What have you done?

*Bạn đã làm xong những gì?*

Nếu chủ từ trong câu là **who/what** thì trật tự từ cũng giống như câu khẳng định.

**Ex:** Who has finished reading the book?

*Ai đã đọc xong quyển sách rồi?*

### □ How long ...? Bao lâu?

• Chúng ta cần chú ý cấu trúc sau:

**How long ...? Bao lâu?**

**... since / for ...**

Để trả lời cho câu hỏi này, ta thường dùng thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

**Ex:** How long have you studied English?

*Bạn đã học tiếng Anh được bao lâu rồi?*

I have studied English for three years.

*Tôi đã học tiếng Anh được ba năm.*

### 2. The use of like, the same as, similar to, and different from

\* Để nói về sự giống nhau hay tương tự nhau, ta dùng:

**like + Noun**

**like + pronoun**

**(be) the same as + Noun / pronoun**

**(be) similar to + Noun / pronoun**

**Ex:** She sings like a singer.

*Cô ấy hát như một ca sĩ.*

I want to sing like her.

*Tôi muốn hát như cô ấy.*

This book is the same as that one.

*Quyển sách này cũng giống như quyển sách kia.*

This dress is similar to that one.

*Chiếc áo đầm này cũng giống như chiếc áo đầm kia.*

\* Để nói về sự khác nhau, ta dùng:

**(be) + different from + Noun/ pronoun**

**Ex:** My situation is different from yours.

*Hoàn cảnh của tôi khác với hoàn cảnh của bạn.*

His hairstyle is different from his brother's.

*Kiểu tóc của anh ta khác kiểu tóc của anh trai anh ta.*

### 3. Comparision with as ... as and not as ... as (not so as).

Ta dùng so sánh khi có hai người, hai vật, hai sự kiện được đưa ra để so sánh.

**As ... as** được dùng trong so sánh bằng nhau.

**Not as...as** hay **not so..as** được dùng trong so sánh không bằng nhau.

Hai loại từ được dùng trong so sánh bằng nhau và không bằng nhau là trạng từ và tính từ.



- Để so sánh hai người hay hai vật giống nhau ta dùng **as ... as**

**Subject + verb + as + adj / adv + as + noun / pronoun**

**Ex<sub>1</sub>:** Nguyen is as old as I am. = Nguyen is as old as me.

*Nguyễn bằng tuổi tôi.*

**Ex<sub>2</sub>:** She runs as fast as her sister.

*Cô ấy chạy nhanh như chị cô ấy.*

- Ngoài ra ta có thể dùng **many, few, much, little** trong so sánh bằng nhau.

**S + V + as + many / few + danh từ đếm được + as + noun / pronoun**

**S + V + as + much / little + danh từ không đếm được + as + noun / pronoun**

**Ex:** Her family has as much money as yours.

*Gia đình của cô ta cũng có nhiều tiền như gia đình bạn.*

I have as few friends as you.

*Tôi cũng có ít bạn như bạn.*

- Để so sánh hai người hay hai vật khác nhau, ta có thể dùng cấu trúc:

**Subject + Verb + not as /so + adj + as + noun / pronoun**

**Ex:** Kim is not as tall as I am / me.

*Kim không cao bằng tôi.*

Money is not so important as health.

*Tiền không quan trọng bằng sức khỏe.*

#### 4. Too to: quá không thể

- Khi chúng ta muốn đưa ra một lý do về một việc gì đó mà chúng ta không thực hiện được – kết quả phủ định, thì chúng ta sẽ dùng cấu trúc sau:

**Subject + be + too + adj (for + object) + to do**

**Ex:** I am too tired to walk.

*Tôi mệt quá không thể đi bộ được.*

This backpack is too heavy for me to carry.

*Cái ba lô này quá nặng, tôi không thể xách nổi.*

This question is too difficult for me to answer.

*Câu hỏi này khó quá, tôi không thể trả lời được.*

## II. EXERCISES

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

1. A. produce B. product C. production D. much
2. A. day B. says C. play D. stay
3. A. raised B. promised C. practiced D. laughed
4. A. household B. ground C. cloud D. should
5. A. poster B. porter C. snow D. nose

**Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. gr\_ce\_y st\_re
2. w\_t m\_rk\_t
3. s\_rv\_
4. p\_nc\_ke
5. \_elicio\_s
6. t\_sty
7. p\_rc\_l
8. \_irm\_il
9. \_urf\_ce m\_il
10. ro\_f

**Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. c\_nv\_ni\_nt
2. h\_m\_d
3. c\_sto\_er
4. \_us\_ne\_s
5. \_es\_de\_t
6. c\_nc\_rne\_
7. s\_tu\_tio\_
8. \_ir-co\_diti\_ner
9. \_isc\_unt
10. e\_fe\_t

**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. c\_nt\_ct
2. p\_rse
3. \_al\_et
4. h\_ird\_es\_er's
5. \_ris\_wa\_ch
6. m\_tor\_ike
7. cl\_se by
8. a\_ou\_d he\_e
9. a\_re\_dy
10. r\_sid\_

**Task 5. Complete the sentences with as or than.**

1. I haven't got as many cousins \_\_\_\_\_ you.
2. Liz works much harder \_\_\_\_\_ John.
3. I'm studying the same subject \_\_\_\_\_ Emma.
4. Was Joan's party better \_\_\_\_\_ Maria's?
5. She's not as clever \_\_\_\_\_ her sister.
6. Are you as tall \_\_\_\_\_ your brother?

**Task 6. Put for or since in the following sentences.**

1. John hasn't seen his friends \_\_\_\_\_ ages.
2. Mary has lived in Bangkok \_\_\_\_\_ 1996.
3. My family have lived in Ho Chi Minh City \_\_\_\_\_ 20 years.
4. They have been married \_\_\_\_\_ 25 years.
5. It's been raining \_\_\_\_\_ 3 p. m.
6. We have been waiting \_\_\_\_\_ an hour.



**Task 7. Complete the dialogue by using the words given in the box.**

neighbor	barber	moved
store	looking	any
across	near	

*Jonh:* Excuse me. I'm your new (1) \_\_\_\_ Jonh. I just (2) \_\_\_\_ in.

*Thuy:* Oh, yes?

*Jonh:* I'm (3) \_\_\_\_ for a grocery (4) \_\_\_\_ . Are there (5) \_\_\_\_ around here?

*Thuy:* Yes, there are some on Pine Street.

*Jonh:* O.K. And is there a Laundromat (6) \_\_\_\_ here?

*Thuy:* Well, I think there's one (7) \_\_\_\_ from the shopping center.

*Jonh:* Thank you.

*Thuy:* By the way, there's a (8) \_\_\_\_ shop in the shopping center, too.

*Jonh:* A barbershop?

**Task 8. Choose the best answer in the brackets. Underline the word you choose.**

1. He looks (as, like, same) his father.
2. (Could, May, Do) you please tell me where I can find Mr. Long?
3. If you want to buy some bread, you'll have to go to the (barber's, baker's, butcher's).
4. Yes, thank you. Can you fill (with, in, on, of) this form for me?
5. They organized a community meeting (in order to, that, because, so) discuss the situation.
6. My house is (as the same as, different from, different) yours.
7. Life in the villages is definitely (change, to change, changing) better.
8. People nowadays can have things (as, like, of) refrigerators, televisions, and telephones.

**Task 9. Put the words in correct order to make meaningful sentences.**

1. open me help can please to it you?
2. me please you could show the way post office the to?
3. I come may in?
4. is my it seat can't you here sit.
5. changing where is room the?
6. next to cinema my house is the.

**Task 10. Complete the sentences with the correct form of adjectives in the brackets.**

1. The moon is not so (bright) ..... as the sun.
2. The sun is (bright) ..... than the moon.
3. Autumn is the (fine) ..... season of the year.
4. This is the (difficult) ..... lesson.
5. In math I am (bad) ..... than in English.
6. He is the (good) ..... boy at mathematics in this class.
7. Lan is (pretty) ..... than her younger sister.
8. This is my (old) ..... brother, he is the (old) ..... child in my family.

**Task 11. Put the verb in brackets in present perfect or simple past tense**

1. I (spend) \_\_\_\_ a holiday with my parents in Nha Trang last week.
2. My motorbike is very new. I just (wash) \_\_\_\_ it.
3. I (go not) \_\_\_\_ to school yesterday.
4. I (call) \_\_\_\_ her several times this morning.
5. I (not see) \_\_\_\_ him four years. I don't know where he is now.
6. Your bicycle looks very new. You (paint) \_\_\_\_ it?
7. They (build) \_\_\_\_ this house last year. They (not finish) \_\_\_\_ yet.
8. The weather (be) \_\_\_\_ very cold in the morning recently.

**Task 12. Choose the correct word in parentheses in the following sentences**

1. Lan sings as \_\_\_\_ as her sister. (well / good)
2. Her house is the same \_\_\_\_ as yours. (height / high)
3. Your dress is the same \_\_\_\_ mine. (as / than)
4. Chau has as \_\_\_\_ books as I. (many / much)
5. Her character is different \_\_\_\_ her mother (from / with)
6. My pen is similar \_\_\_\_ yours. (to / with)

**Task 13. Finish each of the following sentences in such a way that it is as similar as possible in meaning to the sentences before**

1. We started living here ten years ago.  
We have \_\_\_\_.
2. I last wrote to my friend in June.  
I haven't \_\_\_\_.
3. The last time she visited me was two years ago.  
She hasn't \_\_\_\_.
4. Lan began to study English in 2004.  
Lan has \_\_\_\_.
5. It's a long time since we last met each other.  
We haven't \_\_\_\_.



**Task 14. Put the verb in brackets in the present perfect**

1. Would you like some coffee? I just (make) \_\_\_\_\_ some.
2. Here are your shoes; I just (clean) \_\_\_\_\_ them.
3. I (not know) \_\_\_\_\_ him before.
4. Why you (not mend) \_\_\_\_\_ the fuse?
5. I often (see) \_\_\_\_\_ her but I never (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ to her.
6. We (have) \_\_\_\_\_ six tests so far this semester.

**Task 15. Choose the correct answer**

1. She always talk \_\_\_\_\_ herself all the time.  
A. to                      B. with                      C. at                      D. with
2. I'm looking \_\_\_\_\_ a white skirt.  
A. to                      B. for                      C. with                      D. in
3. Look at those beautiful horse \_\_\_\_\_ that field!  
A. on                      B. in                      C. at                      D. for
4. What's \_\_\_\_\_ the television this morning?  
A. on                      B. at                      C. in                      D. about
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is the post - office? About 15 minutes' walk  
A. How long              B. How far              C. How often              D. How tall

**Task 16. Rearrange these words in correct order**

1. I / seen / haven't / for / a / long / time / her.
2. you / want / do / to / it / send / airmail / surface mail / or.
3. shopping mall / is / today / opening / Nga's neighborhood / in / a / new.
4. my / brother / English / for / ten / has / taught / years.
5. what / special / about / is / the / shopping / mall / new ?

**Task 17. Choose the suitable preposition to complete the following sentences**

1. Your parents always proud \_\_\_\_\_ your success. (of / at / in )
2. The park was named \_\_\_\_\_ a young hero, Le Van Tam. (after / on / in )
3. Shall we go for a picnic tomorrow? It depends \_\_\_\_\_ the weather. (at / in / on)
4. I'm not very keen \_\_\_\_\_ the ideal of going out. (in / at / on )
5. Are you interested \_\_\_\_\_ jazz? No, I prefer Pop. (at / on / in)

**Task 18. Fill in each blank with one suitable word**

1. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ been to England?
2. I arrive here \_\_\_\_\_ 15 July.
3. I'm thirsty. I'd \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of tea.
4. How much does your watch \_\_\_\_\_ ? "About 50.000 VND"
5. She was \_\_\_\_\_ friendly that everybody liked her.

**Task 19. Put the word in the right order to make a sentence**

1. you / mind / would / how / this / machine / to / operate / showing?
2. Would / mind / if / you / here / I / sat / waiting / the / for / manager?
3. do / mind / take / if / I / you / a / photo / of.
4. you / mind / would / lending / book / your / for / moment / a?
5. you / mind / would / used / if / I / cell phone / your / some / for / minutes?

**Task 20. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital.**

1. We are waiting for the \_\_\_\_\_ of his plane. **ARRIVE**
2. Every week, there are two \_\_\_\_\_ from Ha Noi to Nha Trang. **FLY**
3. He spoke to me in a \_\_\_\_\_ way. **FRIEND**
4. I don't like stories which have \_\_\_\_\_ endings. **HAPPY**
5. Despite being \_\_\_\_\_, she is always modest. **SUCCESS**

**Unit 8. COUNTRY LIFE AND CITY LIFE****CUỘC SỐNG NÔNG THÔN  
VÀ CUỘC SỐNG THÀNH THỊ****I. GRAMMAR****1. The present progressive tense**

- Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn được thành lập theo cấu trúc sau:

**Subject + be (am/is/are) + V-ing...**

**V-ing** được gọi là hiện tại phân từ (present participle). Hiện tại phân từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm **ing** vào sau động từ nguyên mẫu.



\* **Usage** (Cách dùng)

Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn dùng để diễn tả:

**a. Một hành động đang diễn ra ở thời điểm hiện tại.**

**Ex:** They are watching T.V at the moment.

*Lúc này họ đang xem ti vi.*

**b. Một tình trạng hay hành động mang tính tạm thời (không xảy ra thường xuyên).**

**Ex:** She is wearing a beautiful dress today.

*Hôm nay cô ta mặc một chiếc áo đầm rất đẹp.*

**c. Dùng để diễn tả tương lai, khi một sự việc được đề cập đến đi kèm với một thời điểm cụ thể.**

**Ex:** I am walking to school tomorrow.

*Tôi sẽ đi bộ đến trường vào ngày mai.*

**d. Diễn tả sự than phiền, thường đi kèm với trạng từ always.**

**Ex:** She is always borrowing me money.

*Cô ta lúc nào cũng mượn tôi tiền.*

Những từ nhận biết trong thì hiện tại tiếp diễn như:

- tonight, tomorrow, tomorrow morning, tomorrow afternoon, tomorrow evening, the day after tomorrow ...
- now, at the present, at the moment
- Look! Listen! (Nhìn kia! Nghe này!)

□ Cách thành lập thì hiện tại tiếp diễn

**a. Affirmative form**

**Subject + be (am/is/are) + V-ing**

**Ex:** I am working right now.

*Bây giờ tôi đang làm việc.*

**b. Negative form**

Thể phủ định của thì tiếp diễn được tạo ra bằng cách thêm **not** vào sau động từ **to be**.

**Subject + be (am/is/are) + not + V-ing**

**Ex:** I am not working right now.

*Hiện giờ tôi không có làm việc.*

**c. Interrogative form**

Thể nghi vấn của động từ **to be** được tạo ra bằng cách đảo ngược vị trí của chủ từ và động từ **to be**.

**Am/Is/Are + subject + V-ing?**

**Ex:** Are you working right now?

*Có phải giờ này anh đang làm việc không?*

- Các đại từ nghi vấn như **who, what, where...** cũng thường được dùng trong thì hiện tại tiếp diễn.

**Ex:** Where are you going?

*Bạn đang đi đâu vậy?*

- Nếu các đại từ để hỏi **who, what** làm chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi thì trật tự từ cũng giống như câu khẳng định.

**Ex:** What's happening?

*Chuyện gì xảy ra vậy?*

**Lưu ý:** Thông thường một số động từ sau đây không được dùng ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn: **like, love, want, understand, prefer, remember, hate, need, believe, forget...**

**Ex:** Do you still remember me?

*Bạn vẫn còn nhớ tôi chứ?*

**2. To show changes with get and become**

Nếu theo sau **get** và **become** là một tính từ, thì **get** và **become** có nghĩa là trở nên, trở thành, đưa đến.

**Ex:** She began to get suspicious.

*Cô ấy đã bắt đầu có ý nghi ngờ.*

**3. Comparative adjectives and adverb**

**a. Comparative with short adjectives and adverbs**

Tính từ ngắn và trạng từ ngắn là những từ có một âm tiết như: **small, big, hot, cold, short, old...**

- So sánh hơn với tính từ và trạng từ ngắn, ta có cấu trúc sau:

**Subject + verb + adj-er / adv-er + than + noun / pronoun**



**Ex:** Today is hotter than yesterday.  
*Hôm nay thì nóng hơn hôm qua.*  
 Nam drives faster than Hung.  
*Nam lái xe nhanh hơn Hùng.*

#### b. Comparative with long adjectives / adverbs

Tính từ dài và trạng từ dài là những tính từ, trạng từ có từ hai âm tiết trở lên: **difficult, beautiful, comfortable, intelligent...**

• So sánh hơn với tính từ dài và trạng từ dài, ta có cấu trúc sau:

**Subject + verb + more / less + adj / adv + than + noun / pronoun**

**Ex:** He speaks English more fluently than I.  
*Anh ấy nói tiếng Anh lưu loát hơn tôi.*

#### c. Comparative with nouns

• Khi so sánh hơn dùng với danh từ, ta có cấu trúc sau:

**S + V + fewer + danh từ đếm được + than + noun / pronoun**

**S + V + less + danh từ không đếm được + than + noun / pronoun**

**S + V + more + danh từ đếm được + than + noun / pronoun**

**S + V + more + danh từ không đếm được + noun / pronoun**

**Lưu ý:** Theo sau **more**, chúng ta có thể dùng danh từ đếm được và danh từ không đếm được.

**Ex:** I have more English books than you.  
*Tôi có nhiều sách tiếng Anh hơn bạn.*  
 I have less free time than you.  
*Tôi có ít thời gian rảnh hơn bạn.*  
 I have fewer friends than my younger brother.  
*Tôi có ít bạn hơn anh trai của tôi.*

#### 4. Superlatives

Khi chúng ta muốn so sánh từ ba người, ba vật trở lên, chúng ta không được dùng so sánh hơn mà phải dùng so sánh nhất.

• Ta có cấu trúc của so sánh nhất như sau:

**Subject + be + the + short adjective-est**

**Subject + be + the most + long adjective**

**Ex:** Ho Chi Minh City is the biggest city in Viet Nam.  
*Thành phố Hồ Chí Minh là thành phố lớn nhất Việt Nam.*  
 They are the most important problems.  
*Đó là những vấn đề quan trọng nhất.*

☐ Các trường hợp ngoại lệ (cần phải học thuộc lòng)

**good – better – the best**

**bad – worse – the worst**

**far – farther – the farthest**

**far – further – the furthest**

**many/much – more – the most**

**little – less – the least**

**Lưu ý:** Ta thường dùng:

• **in** để nói về nơi chốn.

**Ex:** She is the best student **in** our class.

*Cô ta là học sinh giỏi nhất lớp chúng tôi.*

• **of** để nói về khoảng thời gian.

**Ex:** Today is the hottest day **of** the week.

*Hôm nay là ngày nóng nhất trong tuần.*

• Các tính từ hai vần luôn dùng **more, the most** khi chúng tận cùng là **-ing, -ed, -ful, -less**, và một số từ như **afraid, correct, eager, famous, modern, normal**.

**Ex:** more useful, more boring, more modern, (the) most useful, (the) most modern, ...

• Các tính từ hai vần có thể dùng **more, (the) most** hay có thể thêm **-ER** hoặc **-EST**: **clear, common, pleasant, polite, quiet, simple, stupid, narrow**

**Ex:** narrower / more narrow

Narrowest / (the) most narrow

• Các tính từ / trạng từ tận cùng bằng **-y** (busy, dirty, funny, easy, lucky, happy, heavy, pretty, ...) ta biến thành

**i + -ER/ -EST**

**Ex:** happier

(the) happiest



## 5. Revision

a. Khi muốn hỏi khoảng cách từ đâu đến đâu bao xa, ta dùng công thức sau:

How far is it from ... to ...?

Ex: How far is it from your house to school?

*Từ nhà bạn đến trường bao xa?*

b. Khi muốn hỏi về bề ngoài của một vật, một người nào đó, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

What + do / does + S + like? (Trông như thế nào?)

Ex: What does her house like?

*Nhà cô ta trông như thế nào?*

c. Khi muốn hỏi ai đó thích điều gì nhất, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

What (things)... do you like best?

Ex: What sports do you like best?

*Bạn thích môn thể thao nào nhất?*

d. Khi muốn biết một người nào đó thích điều gì hơn, khi có hai sự lựa chọn, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

Do you prefer...or...?

Ex: Do you prefer country life or city life?

*Bạn thích cuộc sống nông thôn hơn hay cuộc sống thành thị hơn?*

## II. EXERCISES

Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?

- Ex: 0. A. miss B. machine C. be D. policemiss.
1. A. goods B. look C. blood D. foot .....
2. A. drought B. around C. sound D. thought .....
3. A. migrant B. sight C. night D. fifth .....
4. A. nature B. champagne C. hand D. channel .....
5. A. typhoon B. tragedy C. tasty D. memory .....

Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. fr\_sh a\_r 2. tr\_ffic j\_m 3. vi\_w  
4. aw\_y 5. p\_rman\_ntly 6. r\_mote  
7. f\_cility 8. acc\_ssible 9. d\_finit\_ly 10. beli\_f

Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. pl\_ntif\_l 2. r\_ral 3. ov\_rcr\_wding  
4. t\_pho\_n 5. s\_pply 6. dr\_ught  
7. str\_ggle 8. tr\_gedy 9. str\_in 10. urb\_n

Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. g\_vernm\_nt 2. m\_gr\_nt 3. ad\_qu\_te  
4. pr\_ss\_re 5. m\_dical f\_cility 6. h\_rvest  
7. sk\_rt 8. c\_nveni\_n 9. sh\_ne 10. ex\_min\_tions

Task 5. Fill in each gap with one of the words given in the box.

lights roads schools transportation  
hospitals comforts conveniences

## Advantages of Life in a City

The advantages of living in a large town are many and obvious. The town-dweller enjoys certain (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and (2) \_\_\_\_\_ which the villager lacks. He has good and well-lighted (3) \_\_\_\_\_, cheap public (4) \_\_\_\_\_, electric (5) \_\_\_\_\_, fine shops close at hand to supply him with all necessities and luxuries and well-equipped (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to care for him when he is ill. He can get the best education at first-rate (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and colleges.

Task 6. Open brackets with the correct tense of the verbs.

1. Look! Tom (do) ..... his homework now.  
2. The house was dirty because we (not clean) .....it for a week.  
3. What .....you (do) .....tonight? I (go) ..... to the cinema.  
4. He (visit) ..... his friend yesterday.  
5. As soon as she arrives at school the children (begin) ..... cheering.  
6. .... you (see) ..... that film yet?  
7. He (go) ..... to Ha Long next week.  
8. She (sit) ..... in her room at the moment.  
9. When I came home, he (cook) .....  
10. Peter (look) ..... for a better job because he doesn't earn much.



**Task 10. Making the meaningful sentences with the words given and some other additions.**

1. We/ countryside/ holiday/ next summer.

2. People/ rural/ friendly/ than/ cities.

3. Food/ countryside/ less/ expensive/ towns.

4. There/ much/ pollution/ big cities/ countries.

5. There/ much/ fresh air/ country/ big cities.

- Task 11. Use the comparative form of the words in parentheses to complete the sentences**

1. This skirt is (pretty) \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.

2. His family has (much money) \_\_\_\_\_ than mine.

3. Nga is (intelligent) \_\_\_\_\_ than her brother.

4. Mount Everest is (high) \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.

5. Nam is (tall) \_\_\_\_\_ boy in the family.

6. Kim is (intelligent) \_\_\_\_\_ than I.

7. That chair is (comfortable) \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.

8. That room is (convenient) \_\_\_\_\_ than that one.

1. Your house is \_\_\_\_\_ from school than mine.

- A. farther      B. more far

- C. further      D. far

2. What is \_\_\_\_\_ river in the world?

- A. the bigger      B. the biggest

- C. the most biggest      D. big

3. Nile is \_\_\_\_\_ river in the world.

- A. the bigger                      B. the biggest

- C. big                      D. the most biggest

4. The textbook is \_\_\_\_\_ than the dictionary.

- A. more thinner

- B. thin

- C. thinner

- D. more thinner than



5. How far is it \_\_\_\_\_ your house to school?

- A. to
- B. from
- C. of
- D. at

6. The town is becoming \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. noisy
- B. noisily
- C. noise
- D. more noisily

### Task 13. Translate into English

1. Bạn thích loại nhạc nào nhất? – Tôi thích loại nhạc đồng quê.
2. Đây có phải là bộ phim bạn thích nhất không? – Phải.
3. Từ nhà bạn đến trường mất bao xa? – Khoảng 20 phút.
4. Nhanh lên, trời sắp mưa rồi.
5. Bạn thích cuộc sống thôn quê hơn hay cuộc sống thành thị hơn?

### Task 14. Put the verbs in brackets into the present continuous tense

1. It (rain) \_\_\_\_\_?

Yes, it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ very hard. You can't go out yet.

2. I can't hear what you (say) \_\_\_\_\_; the traffic (make) \_\_\_\_\_ too much noise.

3. You (do) \_\_\_\_\_ anything this evening?

No, I am not.

Well, we (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the cinema. Would you like to go with us?

4. It's a gray day today. The sun (not shine) \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Nga, What's the matter with your hand? It (bleed) \_\_\_\_\_.

### Task 15. Choose the correct tenses of the following sentences

1. I (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ home at 7 o'clock every day.
2. He (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at the restaurant yesterday.
3. Hung (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi to the airport tomorrow.
4. While I was watching TV, the phone (ring) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My mother (teach) \_\_\_\_\_ English at the high school.
6. Lan (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ a new dress today.
7. Yen is good at Chinese but bad at English. So now she (practise) \_\_\_\_\_ English.

### Task 16. Rearrange the following words to make complete sentences

1. You / programs / what / like / do / of / best / kinds?
2. She / too / money / spends / much / on / clothes
3. Would / you / live / to / like / city / big / in / a?
4. What / the / you / evening / do / do / in / usually?
5. Can / with / explain / you / word / this / me?
6. She / trip / a / was / on / Nha Trang / to / four days / for.
7. I / to / amusement / park / go / the / Sunday / morning / every.
8. I / detective / film / like.

### Task 17. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences

1. The lesson is \_\_\_\_\_ difficult that all students can't understand it. (very / so / much)
2. \_\_\_\_\_ have they been married? - For nearly six months. (How long / How much / How far)
3. Where \_\_\_\_\_ last night? (did you go / do you go)
4. She looks \_\_\_\_\_ her mother. (so / like / as)
5. Would you like some sugar?  
Yes, please. Just \_\_\_\_\_ (a few / a little / little)

### Task 18. Rewrite the sentences without changing the meaning

1. It's six years since I last spoke to her.  
I haven't \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Lan will be fourteen next week.  
It is \_\_\_\_\_.
3. How long is it since you used the computer?  
When \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Tuan doesn't run as fast as he used to.  
Tuan \_\_\_\_\_.
5. This is the best motorbike I have ever used.  
I have never \_\_\_\_\_.

### Task 19. Choose the suitable preposition to complete the following sentences

1. She always makes fun \_\_\_\_\_ him. (at / in / of)
2. Do you know the girl \_\_\_\_\_ a curly hair. (on / with / of)
3. I can't get to sleep \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas Eve. I am so excited. (on / in / at)
4. I waited twenty minutes \_\_\_\_\_ a bus yesterday. (for / by / on)
5. My parents is coming to stay with me \_\_\_\_\_ 15 July. (on / at in)



**Task 20. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital.**

- 1. \_\_\_\_\_ air is one of many problems we have to solve. **POLLUTION**
- 2. Internet is now an \_\_\_\_\_ forum for exchanging opinions and ideals. **IMPORTANCE**
- 3. I want to go out but it's raining \_\_\_\_\_. **HEAVY**
- 4. The shop \_\_\_\_\_ showed me a lot of new models, especially it's cheap. **ASSIST**
- 5. She is a \_\_\_\_\_ person. She always helps everybody who has in trouble. **KIND**

**Unit 9. A FIRST-AID COURSE**

**CÁCH SƠ CỨU**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Future simple tense**

Để diễn đạt ý kiến, giả thiết, suy đoán của người nói có liên quan đến tương lai, hoặc để biểu thị cho sự việc xảy ra ở tương lai người ta dùng thì tương lai đơn.

☐ **Usage** (Cách dùng thì tương lai đơn)

**a. Chúng ta dùng thì tương lai đơn để chỉ hành động được lặp đi lặp lại, một thói quen, mà chúng ta phỏng đoán sẽ xảy ra ở tương lai.**

**Ex:** Spring will come again.  
*Mùa xuân sẽ lại đến nữa rồi.*

**b. Thì tương lai đơn còn dùng để diễn đạt một quyết định, dự định hay kế hoạch hình thành ngay lúc nói.**

**Ex:** I will help you to solve this problem.  
*Tôi sẽ giúp bạn giải quyết vấn đề này.*

**c. Thì tương lai đơn được dùng để chỉ sự dự đoán hoặc tiên đoán, những sự việc mà chúng ta nghĩ nó sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai (thường dùng với maybe, probably).**

**Ex:** Jonh will help you.  
*Jonh nhất định sẽ giúp bạn.*  
*Jane will probably win the first prize.*  
*Rất có thể là Jonh sẽ đoạt giải nhất.*

☐ **Cách thành lập thì tương lai đơn:**

**a. Affirmative form**

**Subject + will + verb (bare infinitive)**

**Ex:** Don't worry. I will help you.  
*Đừng lo. Tôi sẽ giúp bạn.*

**b. Negative form**

**Subject + will + not + verb (bare infinitive)**

**Ex:** He will not come tomorrow.  
*Ngày mai anh ấy sẽ không đến.*

**c. Interrogative form**

**Will + subject + verb (bare infinitive) ?**

**Ex:** Will he come tomorrow?  
*Ngày mai anh ấy có đến không?*

▪ Các trạng từ thời gian thường dùng trong thì tương lai:

- next + time** (next week, next Sunday, ...)
- tomorrow** (tomorrow morning, afternoon, ...)
- the day after tomorrow**
- in + time** (in a few minutes, in a month, ...)

**Lưu ý:** Will đi với đại từ chủ ngữ được rút gọn như sau:

I will	=	I'll
you will	=	you'll
he will	=	he'll
she will	=	she'll
it will	=	it'll
we will	=	we'll
they will	=	they'll

**2. Modal verbs: will/shall**

Động từ tình thái **will** được dùng để thành lập câu yêu cầu, câu đề nghị, và lời hứa.



**a. Đưa ra lời yêu cầu** (thường có từ **please** đi kèm)

**Ex:** Will you come this way, please?

*Xin cô vui lòng đi theo lối này!*

Will you fill in this application form, please?

*Xin cô vui lòng điền vào tờ đơn xin việc này!*

**b. Đưa ra lời đề nghị**

**Ex:** The bag is very heavy. I will help you with it.

*Cái túi này nặng lắm. Tôi sẽ xách giúp cô.*

**c. Diễn đạt một lời hứa chắc chắn**

**Ex:** I will come on time tomorrow.

*Ngày mai nhất định tôi sẽ đến đúng giờ.*

\* Ngoài ra **will** còn diễn tả sự đồng ý hoặc sẵn lòng làm điều gì đó.

**Ex:** I will take you home.

*Tôi sẽ đưa bạn về nhà.*

\* Chúng ta cũng có thể sử dụng **would you...** để đưa ra lời yêu cầu, lời mời một cách lịch sự.

**Ex:** **Would you** like a cup of coffee?

*Anh dùng một tách cà phê nhé?*

\* Nhưng để đưa ra lời yêu cầu khẩn thiết hoặc lời mời ân cần ta dùng **won't you...**

**Ex:** **Won't you** have some more coffee?

*Anh dùng thêm một ít cà phê nữa nhé?*

**d. Shall được dùng chủ yếu với ngôi thứ nhất như I và we**

Trong câu hỏi **Shall I ...?** để đưa ra lời đề nghị.

• Ta có cấu trúc sau:

**Shall I + verb ...? Bạn có muốn tôi ... không?**

**Ex:** Shall I call a taxi?

*Bạn có muốn tôi gọi một chiếc taxi không?*

• **Shall we...?** Được dùng để gợi ý.

**Shall we + verb...? Chúng ta... nhé?**

**Ex:** Shall we go to the supermarket?

*Chúng ta đi siêu thị nhé?*

**3. Promises**

Để nhắc nhở, dặn dò người nào đó làm việc gì.

• Ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

**Remember to + verb**

**Be sure to + verb**

Hãy nhớ...

**Ex:** Be sure to get back home soon.

*Hãy nhớ về nhà sớm nhé.*

Yes, I will.

Vâng.

Remember to call me as soon as you arrive there.

*Ngay khi các bạn đến đó hãy nhớ gọi điện cho tôi nhé.*

Yes, we will.

Vâng.

**4. Purpose**

**To / in order to/ so as to** thường được dùng để chỉ mục đích.

**In order to:** để, để cho, để mà

**So as to:** để, để cho, đến nỗi mà

Như vậy, để diễn tả mục đích ta có thể dùng:

**(not) to**

**in order (not) to + Infinitive**

**so as (not) to**

**for + Noun**

**Exs:** I shall stand up **so as to** see better.

*Tôi sẽ đứng lên để thấy rõ hơn.*

I will come there **in order to** help him.

*Tôi sẽ đến đó để giúp đỡ anh ta.*

I shall stand up **to** see better.

*Tôi sẽ đứng lên để nhìn thấy rõ.*



I got up early **in order not to** miss the bus.

Tôi đã thức dậy sớm để không lỡ chuyến xe buýt.

They went to Nha Trang **for a holiday**.

Họ đến Nha Trang để nghỉ mát.

## 5. Revision

- Khi người nói muốn đề nghị giúp một người nào đó làm việc gì, ta dùng cấu trúc sau: **Let me help you...?**

**Ex:** Let me help you to push it? Để tôi giúp bạn đẩy nó nhé?

- Để đề nghị ai làm việc gì, ta dùng những cấu trúc đi với **Can, Could, Will you...?**

Để trả lời:

- Nếu đồng ý ta dùng: *Ok. / Sure. / All right.*

- Nếu không đồng ý ta dùng: *I'm sorry, I can't. / I'm afraid not. I won't be able to.*

**Ex:** Could you send this letter, please?

I'm sorry, I can't.

- Chúng ta có thể dùng động từ **promise** để hứa với một ai đó làm điều gì hoặc không làm điều gì (mệnh đề sau thường dùng thì tương lai đơn).

**Ex:** I promise I will help you.

Tôi hứa sẽ giúp bạn.

I promise I won't do like that.

Tôi hứa sẽ không làm như vậy nữa.

## II. EXERCISES

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

- |                        |                   |                     |                     |
|------------------------|-------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>do</u>        | B. <u>go</u>      | C. <u>so</u>        | D. <u>no</u>        |
| 2. A. <u>crutch</u>    | B. <u>Sunday</u>  | C. <u>būt</u>       | D. <u>bush</u>      |
| 3. A. <u>stretcher</u> | B. <u>sterile</u> | C. <u>prefer</u>    | D. <u>injection</u> |
| 4. A. <u>charge</u>    | B. <u>change</u>  | C. <u>champagne</u> | D. <u>channel</u>   |
| 5. A. <u>think</u>     | B. <u>without</u> | C. <u>south</u>     | D. <u>method</u>    |

**Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |              |              |                 |              |
|--------------|--------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. f_rst-a_d | 2. _me_ge_cy | 3. a_bul_nce    |              |
| 4. c_nsci_us | 5. t_w_l     | 6. h_nd_erc_ief |              |
| 7. w_und     | 8. pr_ss_re  | 9. pr_mi_e      | 10. m_ni_ize |

**Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |               |              |             |            |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. _and_ge    | 2. _tre_ch_r | 3. _rut_h   |            |
| 4. _he_lch_ir | 5. _ye c_art | 6. f_inti_g |            |
| 7. p_tie_t    | 8. f_rc_     | 9. _lev_te  | 10. vi_ti_ |

**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |              |                |              |             |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. s_oc_     | 2. _ver_eat    | 3. t_s_ue    |             |
| 4. d_ma_e    | 5. s_er_le     | 6. s_mew_ere |             |
| 7. c_lm d_wn | 8. _mm_dia_ely | 9. of_en_ed  | 10. fo_w_rd |

**Task 5. Complete the sentences with a suitable preposition.**

1. I hate being late, I like to arrive ..... time.
2. We arrive ..... the station five minutes ~~Hate~~.
3. We'll arrive ..... the station ..... five minutes.
4. I live ..... the third door.
5. Why does Jane look so happy? - Because she's ..... love.
6. "Why did you open my letter?" "I'm sorry, I did it ..... mistake."
7. I spoke to him ..... the phone.
8. "Romeo and Juliet" is a play ..... Shakespeare.

**Task 6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. My English ..... a lot after I lived in London for a month. (improvement)
2. I have two ..... in life: I want to be rich and I want to be famous. (ambitious)
3. I am going to work hard from now. "That's a very good ....." (decide)
4. There are so many ..... between two children, they aren't similar at all. (different)
5. Motor racing is very ..... sport. (use)
6. I asked the teacher for help but unfortunately, I didn't understand his ..... (explain)
7. This is the ..... part of my town. There are lots of factories and business centres there. (industry)
8. Fish soup is a ..... of this area, you must try it. (special)



**Task 7. Use the given words to write complete sentences.**

1. We/ not/ throw rubbish/ carelessly/ so as not to/ pollute/ environment.  
.....
2. Smokers/ must/ know/ danger/ smoking/ in order to/ stop/ smoking.  
.....
3. Mary/ eat/ a lot of/ green vegetables/ in order/ have/ good health.  
.....
4. Mr. Smith /hurrying / so as not to / be late / work.  
.....
5. We/ celebrate/ Mother's Day/ so as to/ show/ love/ gratitude/ our mothers.  
.....
6. They / rushed into / burning house / in order to / save / child.  
.....

**Task 8. Rewrite these sentences with the words given so that the meaning is kept unchanged.**

1. Traveling by plane is much more expensive than traveling by train.  
Traveling by train .....
2. This is the most delicious cake I've ever tasted.  
I have .....
3. The gate is closed to stop the children running into the road.  
The gate is closed so that .....
4. It looks like rain to me.  
I think .....
5. The door was so heavy that the children couldn't push it open.  
The door was too .....
6. A house in that district will cost you at least \$ 100,000.  
You won't be able to .....
7. Could you give it to the teacher, please?  
I hope .....
8. She asked John to repeat what he had said.  
"Please repeat ....."

**Task 9. Supply the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

1. - What you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) this evening ?  
- I am not sure. May be I \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home and \_\_\_\_\_ (do) my homework.
2. - Mrs. Lien is expecting a baby.  
- How lovely! When the baby \_\_\_\_\_ (be) due?  
- At the end of this month.
3. - You \_\_\_\_\_ (pick) up the children when you get back from work?  
- Yes, I will.
4. - What you \_\_\_\_\_ (do) today ?  
- I can't remember. When I get to the office, I \_\_\_\_\_ (look) in my diary. I don't think I \_\_\_\_\_ (do) much today.

**Task 10. Choose the best suitable sentences (circle A or B).**

1. A: It's very dark. Can you turn the light on please?  
B: It's very dark. Do you turn the light on?
2. A: Yes, I promise. I will do that.  
B: Yes, I promise. I do that.
3. A: Do you like coffee? Yes, I do.  
B: Would you like coffee? Yes, I do.
4. A: Do you like having English course?  
B: Would you like to have an English course?
5. A: Could you please tell me the way to the post office?  
B: Would you like to telling me the way to the post office?
6. A: Can I borrow your book?  
B: Will I borrow your book?

**Task 11. Put the verbs in brackets into the future simple**

1. I am sure that you (like) \_\_\_\_\_ our new bicycle.
2. If you think it over you (see) \_\_\_\_\_ that I am right.
3. She (be) \_\_\_\_\_ offended if you don't invite her.
4. He hopes that he (win) \_\_\_\_\_ in the first prize.
5. I (remember) \_\_\_\_\_ this day all my life.
6. I (call) \_\_\_\_\_ you when I arrive.
7. If I have a lot of money, I (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ this motorbike for you.



8. I (call) \_\_\_\_\_ you in a few minutes.
9. I think that Jonh probably (win) \_\_\_\_\_ the first prize.
10. I (come) \_\_\_\_\_ to you immediately when I finish working.

**Task 12. Choose the correct answers**

1. Will you be free tomorrow?  
A. Yes, I will                      B. Yes, please  
C. Yes, I do                        D. Yes, I am
2. What day \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow?  
A. will it be      B. was it      C. is it      D. were it
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ twelve years old next week.  
A. will              B. am              C. will be      D. be
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ some durians yesterday.  
A. buy              B. bought              C. will buy      D. had bought
5. "\_\_\_\_\_ does the play start?" – I think it starts at 7 o'clock.  
A. What              B. When              C. How              D. Where

**Task 13. Translate into English**

1. Tối qua anh đã đi đâu? – Tối qua tôi đi siêu thị.
2. Trước đây tôi không biết bạn.
3. Anh làm xong công việc của anh chưa?
4. Đừng lo lắng. Tôi sẽ giúp bạn.
5. Khi tôi đến anh ấy đang ngủ.
6. Bạn nên mang theo dù. Trời sắp mưa rồi.
7. Sẽ có một chuyến bay đi Nha Trang vào lúc 7 giờ sáng mai.
8. Cảm ơn anh đã cho tôi mượn máy ảnh. Tôi sẽ trả nó cho anh vào thứ Hai.

**Task 14. Arrange these words in correct order**

1. I / look / forward / see / soon.
2. Thank / you / your / very / help / much / for.
3. The flowers / beautiful / and / were / really / helped / to cheer / up / me.
4. a lot of / park / trees / grown / will / be / in / the.
5. does / he / exercises / regularly / morning / be / to / healthy / every.

**Task 15. Combine each of the following pairs of sentences into one sentence by using so as to or in order to**

1. I enter the room quietly. I don't want to wake my younger sister up.
2. He is staying up late. He wants to see the final football match.
3. I have to put on my glasses. I want to see that film.
4. I am studying hard. I don't want to fail the examination.
5. She's on a diet. She wants to lose her weight.
6. I try my best to study. I want to get a good job.
7. I spend much time practising English. I want to speak English well.
8. I checked my test carefully. I don't want to make any mistakes.

**Task 16. Use expressions for requests or offers**

1. I'd like some eggs and bread. (offer)  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. You are driving too fast. (request)  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. The book is on the shelf but it's high. (request)  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. I missed the bus. (offer)  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. The room is very hot. I can't sleep. (request)  
\_\_\_\_\_

**Task 17. Supply the correct form of the verbs in brackets**

1. He (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ for Ha Noi yesterday.
2. When we (arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ last night, they were playing chess.
3. Why \_\_\_\_\_ Hoa (go) to school late this morning?  
Because she (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ TV late last night.
4. When I arrive there I (call) \_\_\_\_\_ you.
5. Last week our class (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a test. It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very difficult and almost everybody couldn't do it.

**Task 18. Rewrite the sentences without changing the meaning**

1. It's a long time since we became close friends.  
We have \_\_\_\_\_.



2. I began to collect stamps in 2000.

I have \_\_\_\_\_.

3. We started living here ten years ago.

We have \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Keeping the environment clean is very important.

It's \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I'm very sad that I wasn't accepted in that school.

I'm very sad not \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 19. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences.**

1. It takes a long time to learn a new language, \_\_\_\_\_? (doesn't it, does it)

2. The opposite of beautiful is \_\_\_\_\_ (ugly / nice)

3. Whose book is it? It's my \_\_\_\_\_ (sister / sister's / sisters)

4. \_\_\_\_\_ did she feel? - Very nervous. (What / Which / How)

5. If I were you, I \_\_\_\_\_ that bicycle. (won't buy / wouldn't buy)

**Task 20. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the words in block capital**

1. Each of my friends has a \_\_\_\_\_ character. **DIFFER**

2. She has short \_\_\_\_\_ hair. **CURL**

3. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ festival in Viet Nam. **TRADITION**

4. You must make a quick \_\_\_\_\_ whether you go or not. **DECIDE**

5. The \_\_\_\_\_ she gave last night was marvelous. **PERFORM**

**Unit 10. RECYCLING**

**SỰ TÁI CHẾ**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Adjectives followed by an infinitive**

Khi muốn diễn đạt cảm nghĩ của người nào đó về điều gì, ta dùng động từ nguyên mẫu đứng sau tính từ.

• Ta có cấu trúc sau:

to be + adjective + to infinitive.

**Ex:** It's difficult to solve this problem.

Thật là khó giải bài toán này.

Thông thường ta dùng chủ ngữ giả **It** (dummy subject) để thay thế cho chủ ngữ thật là **To-infinitive**.

**Ex:** It is easy to learn English. = To learn English is easy.

Dummy Subject

Real Subject

• Một số tính từ thường được dùng trong cấu trúc này như:

**difficult, easy, hard, dangerous, safe, happy, glad, please...**

**2. Adjectives followed by a noun clause**

• Ở phần này chúng ta học một mệnh đề danh từ đi theo sau một tính từ, ta có cấu trúc sau:

to be + adjective + that + noun clause

**Ex:** I'm glad that you enjoyed the meal.

Tôi lấy làm vui thích khi bạn ăn ngon miệng.

I'm afraid that I can't come to the party.

Tôi e rằng tôi không thể đến dự tiệc được.

We were surprised that she came.

Chúng tôi đã lấy làm ngạc nhiên là cô ta đã đến.

• Cấu trúc này thường được dùng với một số tính từ như: **afraid, convinced, amused, annoyed, anxious, aware, certain, confident, conscious, obvious, surprised, sure, pleased, delighted..**

**3. Passive voice**

☐ **Active form**

**Thể chủ động** là thể trong đó chủ ngữ thực hiện hành động.

**Ex:** They built this house in 1990.

Họ xây căn nhà này vào năm 1990.

☐ **Passive form**

**Thể bị động** là thể trong đó chủ ngữ nhận hoặc chịu ảnh hưởng của hành động.

**Ex:** This house was built in 1990.

Căn nhà này được xây vào năm 1990.



• Muốn đổi thể chủ động sang thể bị động ta thực hiện như sau:

**Active (chủ động)** Subject + verb + object.

**Passive (bị động)** Subject + (be + past participle) + by object.

**\* Usage**

- Chúng ta dùng thể bị động khi chúng ta muốn nhấn mạnh (đề cập) rằng tác nhân gây ra hành động không quan trọng.

**Ex:** The house was built in 1987.

*Căn nhà này được xây vào năm 1987.*

- Chúng ta còn dùng thể bị động trong câu mang tính chất chung chung không nói về riêng ai. Thường dùng trong bảng thông báo, nội quy, biển báo, và đặc biệt người nói không muốn đề cập đến tác nhân.

**Ex:** A serious mistake was made in this pay – roll.

*Có một sự sai sót nghiêm trọng trong bảng tính lương này.*

**\* Có hai điều chúng ta cần phải lưu ý:**

1. Dạng bị động thái cách (stative passive) không có hình thức chủ động tương đương. Dạng bị động này mô tả trạng thái, hay tình huống của sự vật, sự việc chứ không mô tả hành động, và quá khứ phân từ trong câu có chức năng như tính từ.

**Ex:** The shirt is made of cotton.

*Chiếc áo này được làm từ vải cotton.*

2. Ta dùng thể bị động cho những ngoại động từ (động từ có túc từ theo sau) còn nội động từ không được chia ở thể bị động.

**Ex:** Our plan **succeeded** at last.

*Sau cùng kế hoạch của chúng ta cũng thành công.*

Lan **seemed** unhappy last night.

*Tối hôm qua Lan có vẻ không vui.*

(Hai động từ **succeed** và **seem** là nội động từ nên không thể chia ở thể bị động)

**\* Một số thì ở dạng bị động**

**1). Simple present tense**

- Cấu trúc thể bị động ở thì hiện tại:

Subject + am/is/are + pp + ...(by object)

**Ex:** Active: I clean the room everyday.

Passive: The room is cleaned by me everyday.

**2). Present continuous tense**

- Cấu trúc bị động ở thì hiện tại tiếp diễn:

Passive:

Subject + am/is/are + being + pp + (by object)

**Ex:** Active: I am cleaning the room.

Passive: The room is being cleaned by me.

**3). Simple past tense**

Passive:

Subject + was/were + pp + (by object)

**Ex:** Active: They built the house in 1990.

Passive: The house was built in 1990.

**4). Past continuous tense**

Passive:

Subject + was/were + being + pp + (by object)

**Ex:** Active: She was cleaning the room when I arrived.

Passive: The room was being cleaned by her when I arrived.

**5). Present perfect**

Passive:

Subject + have/ has + pp + (by object)

**Ex:** Active: They have cleaned the house.

Passive: The house has been cleaned.

**6). Past perfect**

Passive:

Subject + had been + pp + (by object)

**Ex:** Active: They had cleaned the house.

Passive: The house had been cleaned.

**7). Near future tense**

Passive:

Subject + be going to + pp + (by object)



**Ex:** Active: He is going to write a letter to her.  
Passive: A letter is going to be written to her by him.

### 8). Modal verbs

Passive: **Subject + modal verb + be + pp + (by object)**

**Ex:** Active: We can solve this problem.  
Passive: This problem can be solved.

### Lưu ý:

1\*. Nếu chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động là: **they, someone, people, everybody** khi đổi sang thể bị động, các từ này được hiểu ngầm, có nghĩa là ta bỏ **by + object**.

**Ex:** Active: Someone has clean the house.  
Passive: The house has been cleaned (by someone).

2\*. Nếu chủ ngữ là **nobody, no one** ta cũng bỏ **by + object**. Tuy nhiên, ta phải dùng phủ định của động từ.

**Ex:** Nobody knows the answer.

→ The answer isn't known.

9). Những động từ như: **be, happen, seem, appear, belong, die, come, go, occur, have, sleep, stay, walk** và **cost** được dùng ở hình thức chủ động khi chúng không có túc từ / tân ngữ theo sau.

**Ex:** I **slept** well last night.

*Hôm qua tôi ngủ rất ngon.*

The watch **costs** 9.500.000 VND.

*Chiếc đồng hồ này trị giá 9.500.000 đồng.*

### 4. Revision

a. Khi muốn hỏi một ai về việc tìm thông tin nào đó, ta sẽ dùng cấu trúc sau:

**Where can we look for information on + Noun?**

**Ex:** Where can we look for information on the English club?

*Chúng tôi có thể tìm thông tin về câu lạc bộ tiếng Anh ở đâu?*

b. Khi muốn hỏi về thời gian phải tốn kém bao lâu để làm điều gì, ta dùng hai cấu trúc sau:

**How long does it take before...?**

**How long does it take to do sth...?**

**Ex:** How long does it take before we can speak English?

*Mất bao lâu trước khi chúng tôi nói được tiếng Anh?*

How long does it take to get to the airport?

*Mất khoảng bao lâu để đến được sân bay?*

Để trả lời: **It takes + time + to do sth**

**Ex:** It takes us 20 minutes to get to the airport.

*Chúng ta mất khoảng 20 phút để tới sân bay.*

c. Để hỏi mục đích của một người nào đó sử dụng một vật vào việc gì, ta có thể dùng cấu trúc sau:

**What + do + subject + do with...?**

**Ex:** What do people do with these empty milk bottles?

*Người ta làm gì với những chai sữa không này?*

— They recycle them. *Họ tái chế chúng.*

### II. EXERCISES

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

- |                         |                           |                      |                      |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>re</u> fill    | B. <u>re</u> presentative | C. <u>re</u> duce    | D. <u>re</u> use     |
| 2. A. <u>th</u> row     | B. <u>fl</u> ower         | C. <u>to</u> wn      | D. <u>co</u> w       |
| 3. A. <u>fe</u> rtilize | B. <u>st</u> erile        | C. <u>em</u> ergency | D. <u>pe</u> rmanent |
| 4. A. <u>w</u> ound     | B. <u>co</u> unt          | C. <u>mo</u> untain  | D. <u>so</u> und     |
| 5. A. <u>g</u> uide     | B. <u>fr</u> uit          | C. <u>su</u> it      | D. <u>ju</u> ice     |

**Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                     |                       |                          |
|---------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. r _ cy _ li _ g  | 2. r _ d _ ce         | 3. wr _ p                |
| 4. f _ rt _ li _ er | 5. _ ec _ mp _ se     | 6. _ ep _ ese _ tati _ e |
| 7. _ ack _ ge       | 8. _ las _ ic _ b _ g | 9. c _ oth _ b _ g       |
| 10. m _ ta _        |                       |                          |

**Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                |                   |                 |
|----------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. _ abr _ c   | 2. c _ mp _ se    | 3. pi _ e       |
| 4. r _ fi _ l  | 5. _ las _ wa _ e | 6. d _ po _ it  |
| 7. w _ ste     | 8. m _ xt _ re    | 9. m _ sq _ ito |
| 10. sc _ tte _ |                   |                 |

**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                    |                     |                |
|--------------------|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. _ nst _ ad      | 2. _ nd _ stri _ us | 3. _ xpl _ in  |
| 4. _ eli _ htf _ l | 5. _ ete _ ge _ t   | 6. l _ at _ er |
| 7. r _ lie _ e     | 8. sh _ de          | 9. so _ k      |
| 10. oc _ ur        |                     |                |



**Task 5. Complete the recycling instructions. Use the verbs in the box.**

take	take	produce
melt	make	flatten

First, (0) take out all the parts of the car that can be reused. Then (1) \_\_\_\_\_ the ear with a big machine. Next, (2) \_\_\_\_\_ the car away to the steel factory. There, (3) \_\_\_\_\_ each car into something like a small metal brick. (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the bricks and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ them into new steel.

**Task 6. Put the verbs in brackets into the passive to complete the text.**

In industry, most glass (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (recycle), but ordinary people are often too lazy to do this. They throw their bottles away, and the bottles (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) to the clump. It is difficult for workers on the dump to separate glass from other waste. That is why there are "bottle banks" to encourage people to recycle glass. The glass (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (collect) and (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (take) to the factory. There it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (break) up, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (melt) and (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (make) into new bottles.

**Task 7. Choose the suitable word or phrase to fill in the spaces to complete the sentences. Circle the letter you choose.**

- It's interesting ..... English.  
A. learn    B. learning    C. to learn    D. to be learned
- Newspapers ..... to the house by the postman everyday.  
A. deliver    B. delivering  
C. are delivered    D. to deliver
- Milk bottles can be cleaned .....  
A. reused    B. to be reuse    C. to reuse    D. reusing
- I was very happy ..... your letter last night.  
A. to receive    B. to receiving  
C. to be received    D. receive
- Would you like to go to a dance tonight? "I'm sorry I can't. I ..... my exercises this evening."  
A. do    B. am doing    C. to do    D. will do
- It's very windy outside .....? Of course, I'll do it now.  
A. Would you like to close the window  
B. Can I close the window  
C. Will you close the window, please  
D. Shall you close the window

**Task 8. Make the meaningful sentences with the words given and some changes or additions.**

- d/ find a good job.  
.....
- this book/ easy/ read.  
.....
- important/ keep/ vocabulary records.  
.....
- I/ pleased/ see you've stopped smoking.  
.....
- impossible/ keep the house tidy with five children.  
.....
- lovely/ see you last night.  
.....

**Task 9. Give the similar adjectives forms for the nouns given belows:**

NOUNS

ADJECTIVES

- success .....
- luck .....
- romance .....
- wind .....
- difference .....
- importance .....
- happiness .....
- health .....
- person .....
- generosity .....

**Task 10. Make the questions for the underlined words.**

- 5 billion were spent on its development.  
.....
- Twenty planes have been built altogether.  
.....
- The House of Parliament were built in the nineteenth century.  
.....



4. Champagne is produced in France.  
.....
5. Our post is delivered twice a day.  
.....
6. Three teenagers were given an award for bravery yesterday.  
.....

**Task 11. Change the following sentences from active voice to passive voice**

1. Columbus discovered America.
2. The police caught the thief.
3. They didn't look after the children properly.
4. They have changed the date of the meeting.
5. Tam broke the glass.
6. Nga left my handbag on the bus this morning.
7. People speak English everywhere.
8. Did her friends give her a lot of special presents on her birthday?
9. Last night we saw a lot of film.
10. They built the house in 2000.

**Task 12. Arrange the words in correct order**

1. I / happy / to / see / am / very / again / you.
2. is / it / to / keep / very / important / clean / the / environment.
3. to / wear / slippers / common / is / it / very / house / the / in.
4. this / easy / song / is / sing / to / it.
5. interesting / it / is / to / him / talk / very / to.
6. difficult / to translate / these / words / it / is / English / into.
7. lucky / are / you / very / get / to / this / prize.
8. It / difficult / solve / is / to / this / problem.

**Task 13. Sentence transformation**

1. Making him laugh is very difficult.  
It is .....
2. Mr. Tam is a careful driver.  
Mr. Tam .....

3. The Thuy is rich. She can buy what she likes.

The women is .....

4. Being on time is very important.

It is .....

5. The teacher is ill. We are very sad.

We are very sad .....

6. We keep the friendship for a long time. We are very happy.

We are very happy .....

**Task 14. Translate the sentences into English**

1. Chiếc xe đó được tái chế tại Nhật.
2. Các sách này được xuất bản ở Đà Nẵng.
3. Thật là khó giải quyết vấn đề này.
4. Cà chua nên được trồng vào mùa xuân.
5. Bản báo cáo đã được cô Lan viết.

**Task 15. Choose the correct answer**

1. We should use cloth bags \_\_\_\_\_ of plastic bags.  
A. instead    B. besides    C. more than    D. compare
2. The prefix "re" in the word reuse means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. for    B. stop    C. again    D. against
3. Farmers collect household and the garden waste to make \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. compost    B. compose    C. compound    D. pipes
4. The opposite of "rich" is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the rich    B. the poor    C. poor    D. bad
5. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ to live in such a dirty place.  
A. healthy    B. unhealthy    C. health    D. healthily

**Task 16. Change the following active sentences to passive sentences**

1. The nurse told me to wait.
2. The nurse took me to another room.
3. The car hits the dog.
4. Does everybody in the class understand me?
5. My mother will prepare the food.



**Task 17. Choose the suitable prepositions to complete following sentences**

1. He goes \_\_\_\_\_ work at nine o'clock every day. (to / at / in)
2. We have played tennis \_\_\_\_\_ two hours. (for / about / at)
3. We'll know the result of the examination \_\_\_\_\_ two weeks. (in / on / by)
4. You can meet me \_\_\_\_\_ 7 a.m and 9 a.m. (between / at / on)
5. They give their children toys \_\_\_\_\_ Christmas. (between / at / on)

**Task 18. Fill in the blanks with because / if / when to complete the sentences**

1. I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you \_\_\_\_\_ I get back.
2. You should inform the police \_\_\_\_\_ your bicycle is stolen.
3. They decided to go out to eat \_\_\_\_\_ they had no food at home.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ he changed a lot, we didn't recognise him.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you're ready, we can start now.
6. The air is polluted \_\_\_\_\_ there is too much traffic.

**Task 19. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ you work harder, you won't be able to pass the exam.  
since / Unless / If
2. How \_\_\_\_\_ did they sleep? (good / nice / well)
3. It took us quite a long time to get there. It was \_\_\_\_\_ journey. (a three-hour / three hours / a three - hours)
4. I went to sleep \_\_\_\_\_ the film. (while / during)
5. It's late. It's time \_\_\_\_\_ home. (we went/ we go / we should go)

**Task 20. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital**

1. Our teacher always \_\_\_\_\_ us to study hard. **COURAGE**
2. This form must have the \_\_\_\_\_ of the writer. **SIGN**
3. This book is very \_\_\_\_\_ because it mentions a lot of different situations we usually face. **USE**
4. It's very \_\_\_\_\_ for children to play with knives. **DANGER**
5. It is a very simple questions. You can answer it \_\_\_\_\_. **EASY**

**Unit 11. TRAVELING AROUND VIET NAM**

**DU LỊCH KHÁM VIỆT NAM**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Request**

- Khi muốn yêu cầu ai làm gì, chúng ta có những cách diễn đạt sau:

**Do you mind + V -ing..?**

**Do you mind if...?**

**Would you mind + V-ing...?**

**Would you mind if + subject + verb** (động từ ở thì quá khứ đơn)

- Chúng ta dùng **Would you mind if.../ Do you mind if...** khi muốn xin phép ai làm điều gì.
- Chúng ta dùng **Would you mind + V-ing** hay **Do you mind + V-ing** khi muốn nhờ ai làm điều gì cho mình.

**Lưu ý: Do you mind / Would you mind = Is that ok with you?**  
và khi đáp lại những câu trả lời trên nếu:

**• Đồng ý**

No, I don't mind.

No, of course not.

Not at all.

Go right ahead

**• Từ chối**

I'm sorry, I can't.

I'm sorry. I'd like to, but...

I'd prefer you didn't.

I'd rather you didn't.

**Ex:** Do you mind driving me home after school?

\_ I'm sorry. I'm too busy.

*Bạn làm ơn chở tôi về nhà sau khi tan học được không?*

*Thật xin lỗi. Tôi bận rồi.*

Do you mind if I use your phone?

\_ Go right ahead.

*Tôi sử dụng nhờ điện thoại của bạn được chứ?*

*Cứ tự nhiên.*



Would you mind turning off the TV?

*Bạn làm ơn tắt TV giúp được không?*

Would you mind if I made a call?

\_ I prefer you didn't. I'm waiting for an important call.

*Bạn có phiền nếu tôi gọi điện được không?*

*Tôi e là không được. Tôi đang chờ một cú điện thoại quan trọng.*

## 2. See someone do and see someone doing

a. Chúng ta dùng **see someone do** khi ta thấy hành động nào đó xảy ra từ đầu đến cuối.

**Ex:** I saw a boy throw a stone into the house.

*Tôi thấy một cậu bé ném một hòn đá vào nhà.*

b. Chúng ta dùng **see someone doing something** khi ta thấy hành động nào đó xảy ra giữa chừng.

**Ex:** I saw her cleaning the room.

*Tôi thấy cô ấy đang lau phòng.*

→ Ta sử dụng cấu trúc này với một số động từ khác như: **hear, feel, notice, listen, watch...** Những động từ này thường được gọi là động từ chỉ giác quan (Verbs of perception).

## 3. The participles

Có hai loại phân từ: Hiện tại phân từ (present participle) và quá khứ phân từ (past participle)

### a. Hiện tại phân từ

**Hiện tại phân từ** được thành lập bằng cách thêm **-ing** vào sau một động từ.

→ Hiện tại phân từ hay cụm hiện tại phân từ có thể đứng sau một danh từ hay một cụm danh từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ hay cụm danh từ đó. Đó là dạng rút gọn của mệnh đề quan hệ.

**Ex:** The girl **reading a books in the library** is my friend.

(The girl who is reading books in the library is my friend.)

*Cô gái đang đọc sách trong thư viện là bạn tôi.*

▪ **Reading a book in the library** là cụm phân từ đứng sau danh từ **the girl** bổ nghĩa cho danh từ **the girl**.

→ Hiện tại phân từ xuất hiện trong tất cả các thì tiếp diễn.

**Ex:** The girl is reading a book.

*Cô gái đang đọc một quyển sách.*

### b. Past participle

**Quá khứ phân từ** được thành lập bằng cách thêm **-ed** vào sau động từ hợp quy tắc hoặc dùng động từ ở cột thứ ba của động từ bất qui tắc.

→ **Quá khứ phân từ** hay **cụm quá khứ phân từ** có thể dùng sau danh từ hay cụm danh từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ hay cụm danh từ đó. Đây cũng là trường hợp rút gọn của mệnh đề quan hệ (thể bị động).

**Ex:** The toys **made in China** are cheap.

(The toys which are made in China are cheap.)

*Đồ chơi được sản xuất ở Trung Quốc thì rẻ.*

→ Quá khứ phân từ dùng trong các thì hoàn thành hay thể bị động.

**Ex:** These toys have been made for 6 months.

*Những đồ chơi này được sản xuất 6 tháng rồi.*

## II. EXERCISES

### Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?

- |                      |                   |                  |                      |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>reading</u> | B. <u>middle</u>  | C. <u>life</u>   | D. <u>pictures</u> . |
| 2. A. <u>rain</u>    | B. <u>leisure</u> | C. <u>break</u>  | D. <u>grey</u>       |
| 3. A. <u>this</u>    | B. <u>thick</u>   | C. <u>math</u>   | D. <u>thin</u>       |
| 4. A. <u>poster</u>  | B. <u>come</u>    | C. <u>mother</u> | D. <u>love</u>       |
| 5. A. <u>great</u>   | B. <u>friend</u>  | C. <u>dead</u>   | D. <u>breath</u>     |

### Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

- |                      |                     |              |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| 1. _ro_nd            | 2. a_rp_rt          | 3. s_ga_ca_e |
| 4. lu_ga_e           | 5. b_tan_c_l ga_de_ | 6. i_stit_te |
| 7. _ce_nic _nsti_ute | 8. h_rb_r           | 9. _ffsh_re  |
| 10. gi_nt            |                     |              |

### Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

- |                  |                   |               |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. _cco_mod_tio_ | 2. _at_rf_ll      | 3. l_w p_iced |
| 4. _ove_p        | 5. m_unt_in sl_pe | 6. _tre_m     |
| 7. r_co_niz_     | 8. h_rita_e       | 9. tr_ba_     |
| 10. bu_dh_       |                   |               |

### Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

- |             |                |                   |
|-------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. ca_e     | 2. _agn_fice_t | 3. _im_sto_e      |
| 4. s_nba_he | 5. fl_ri_t     | 6. _ea_ide r_sort |
| 7. c_no_    | 8. _vert_rn    | 9. p_d_le         |
| 10. st_m_le |                |                   |



Task 5. Fill in each gap with one of the words given in the box.

pleasant	wooden	back
begins	Island	caves
probably	trip	

Enjoy the very best that Cat Ba (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and Ha Long Bay have to offer. Your adventure (2) \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning by hydrofoil boat to Cat Ba Island. Here, your own private (3) \_\_\_\_\_ junk will transport you to Cat Ba's secluded, crystal clear beaches where you will (4) \_\_\_\_\_ be the only people here. Enjoy a (5) \_\_\_\_\_ lunch on the boat as it passes through Lan Ha Bay (famous for its pearl farms) and enters Ha Long Bay prized for its many islands and scenic (6) \_\_\_\_\_. A trek through Sung Sot Cave, Ha Long Bay's most beautiful cave, allows you an up close experience of Vietnam's most pristine beauty spot. Your boat (7) \_\_\_\_\_ ends in Ha Long City where your car awaits to bring you (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to Hai Phong.

Do not forget your camera as this area is designated as Vietnam's most beautiful World Heritage Site.

Task 6. Supply the correct tense of the verbs in brackets.

Yesterday was Sunday, so I (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (not/ go) to school. I (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (do) a lot of things. I (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (help) my mother to prepare breakfast. After breakfast I (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (clean) the floor and (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (water) the flowers in the garden. In the afternoon, I (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to the zoo with my brother. There I (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (see) a lot of animals. In the evening, I prepared my lesson for Monday.

Task 7. Underline the most suitable word or phrase in bold to complete the sentences.

1. When Dick saw his neighbor kick his dog he became **angry/ nervous**.
2. Sue wasn't really **interested/ interesting** in the film.
3. We were both **afraid/ anxious** that we would miss the plane.
4. I wish you wouldn't snap your finger. It's very **annoying/ worrying**.
5. You're not **scared/ thrilled** of spiders, are you?
6. If we forget to do our home work, our teacher will get **cross/ terrifying**.
7. Tim completely lost his temper. He was absolutely **furious/ upset**.
8. Your written work is full of **careless/ naughty** mistakes.

Task 8. Rewrite the following sentences with the correct information.

1. The capital of France is London.  
.....
2. Traveling by plane takes more time than traveling by train.  
.....
3. Eiffel Tower is located in Russia.  
.....
4. Snow falls in summer.  
.....
5. People dance when they are sad.  
.....
6. The sun moves around the earth.  
.....
7. Our body temperature is 40°C.  
.....

Task 9. Making the meaningful sentences of a conversation with the words given, some changes and additions.

1. morning/ Madam/ help you?  
.....
2. Yes / open/ account.  
.....
3. Mind/ fill/ form/ first?  
.....
4. Not/ all/ borrow/ your/ pen?  
.....
5. Certainly/ much/ like/ deposit/ account?  
.....
6. 100 USD /in check/ alright?  
.....
7. afraid/ not/ identity card/ passport/ do?  
.....
8. Certainly/ now/ seat/ wait/ name/ called  
.....



**Task 10. Complete each sentence with a suitable form of: do, take or make.**

1. I Have you .....exercise 3 yet?
2. I can't come this afternoon. I'm ..... an English exam.
3. Jack has .....very well this term.
4. I'm afraid that you haven't ..... any progress.
5. Sue didn't know the answer, so she ..... a guess.
6. You all look tired. Let's ..... a break.
7. This is a good composition, but you have ..... a lot of errors.
8. I think you should ..... yourself more seriously.
9. The teacher gave a lecture, and the class .....notes.
10. Paul finds math difficult, but he..... his best.

**Task 11. Rewrite the sentences in such a way that it means nearly the same as the one above**

1. May I turn on the TV?  
Do you \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Please don't play your music so loudly.  
Would you mind \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Is it all right if I close the door?  
Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Would you mind not using the office phone?  
I'd \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 12. Make one sentence from two by using ing or ed clause**

1. Everybody is running out of the building quickly. The building is burning.
2. The girl is singing this song very well. What is the girl's name?
3. Do you like the film last night. The film was shown on TV.
4. The girl is intelligent. She sits next to me.
5. The Thuy was very interested in our project. She spoke to me on the phone.

**Task 13. Arrange the words in correct order**

1. Tam / cut / while / himself / while / he / shaving / was.
2. our / English teacher / us / took / the / to / zoo / last week.
3. Do / mind / if / mind / close / I / the window?
4. Chau / dance / as well as / doesn't / Tuyet / does.
5. my / classmate / the / girl / Miss Thu / talking / is / to.

**Task 14. Use Do / Would you mind + V-ing or Do / Would you mind if ? to make the following requests more polite**

1. Can I smoke a cigarette here?
2. Could you take me to the airport?
3. Can I try on your shoes?
4. Could you take a picture for me?
5. Can you post this letter for me?
6. Could you take this book to the library for me?
7. Can you put my case on the rack?
8. Could you clean the table for me?

**Task 15. Translate these sentences into English**

1. Làm ơn cho tôi mượn điện thoại di động của bạn được không?
2. Làm ơn tắt ti vi giúp?
3. Xin chị làm ơn nhắc giùm cái hộp được không?
4. Tôi mở cửa được chứ?
5. Chúng ta cách Hà Nội có xa không? – Cách trung tâm thành phố khoảng 40 phút đi xe.

**Task 16. Rewrite each sentence by using the structure It's + adjective + to infinitive**

1. To understand him is difficult.  
\_\_\_\_\_.
2. To solve this problem is difficult  
\_\_\_\_\_.
3. To open that jar is difficult.  
\_\_\_\_\_.
4. To master a language is hard.  
\_\_\_\_\_.
5. To get a taxi in this town is difficult.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 17. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences**

1. She speaks English well, \_\_\_\_\_? (does she / doesn't she)
2. Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ me home? (taking / take)
3. Nga has been working here since she \_\_\_\_\_ university. (left / leaves)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ I carry that bag for you? - Oh, thank you. (Shall / do / would)
5. The club is for members only. You \_\_\_\_\_ you're a member.  
(can't go in unless / can't go in if / can go in unless)



**Task 18. Choose the suitable preposition to complete the sentences**

1. Are there any good programs \_\_\_\_\_ television tonight? (in / on)
2. My morning routine is to get up at seven, have breakfast, then leave home \_\_\_\_\_ eight. (on / in / at)
3. To give \_\_\_\_\_ a bad habit is very difficult. (on / in / up)
4. I got \_\_\_\_\_ the plane at 10 a.m and the plane took off on time. (on / by / of)
5. I'll look \_\_\_\_\_ your children while you go to work. (up / after / down)

**Task 19. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital**

1. He grew \_\_\_\_\_ after waiting for a long time. **PATIENT**
2. It was a \_\_\_\_\_ time, but we never gave up hope. **DIFFICULTY**
3. My house is near market, so it's \_\_\_\_\_ for me in buying foods for my family. **CONVENIENCE**
4. He is \_\_\_\_\_ enough to carry this suitcase. **STRENGTH**
5. Ha Long Bay is in \_\_\_\_\_ Viet Nam. **NORTH**

**Task 20. Use the correct forms of the verbs in brackets to complete the following sentences**

1. I (not go) \_\_\_\_\_ out this evening. I (stay) \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
2. I (remember) \_\_\_\_\_ this day all my life.
3. I wonder how many of them still (be) \_\_\_\_\_ there next year.
4. You should practise (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ English everyday.
5. I (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese at university, but now I (forget) \_\_\_\_\_ most of it.
6. We already (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ the first semester exams.
7. We (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a party next Sunday. Would you like (come) \_\_\_\_\_?
8. Miss Giang (not visit) \_\_\_\_\_ us since she (move) \_\_\_\_\_ to the new town.

**Unit 12. A VACATION ABROAD**

**MỘT KỲ NGHỈ Ở NƯỚC NGOÀI**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Past continuous tense**

Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn được thành lập từ thì quá khứ đơn của động từ **to be** đi kèm với một động từ thêm **-ing**.

\* Cách thành lập cấu trúc của thì quá khứ tiếp diễn:

**a. Affirmative form**

**I, He, She, It/ Chủ ngữ số ít + was + V-ing**  
**We, You, They/ Chủ ngữ số nhiều + were + V-ing**

**Ex:** I was watching television at seven o'clock last night.

*Lúc 7 giờ tối hôm qua, tôi đang xem ti vi.*

**b. Negative form**

**I, He, She, It, ... + was + not + V-ing**  
**We, You, They, ... + were + not + V-ing**

**Ex:** I wasn't watching television at 7 o'clock last night.

*Tôi không xem ti vi lúc 7 giờ tối hôm qua.*

**c. Interrogative form**

**Was + I, he, she, it + V-ing?**  
**Were + we, you, they + V-ing?**

**Ex:** Were you watching television at 7 o'clock last night?

*Lúc 7 giờ tối hôm qua, bạn đang xem ti vi phải không?*

**Wh- questions with present continuous tense**

**Wh- + was/were + subject + V-ing?**

**Ex:** Why was she crying?

*Tại sao cô ấy khóc?*

*Because she failed in the examination.*

*Vì cô ấy thi rớt.*



**Lưu ý:** Nếu chủ từ để hỏi **who/ what** làm chủ ngữ trong câu thì trật tự trong câu hỏi cũng tương tự như trong câu khẳng định.

**Who/ What + subject + was / were + V-ing?**

**Ex:** Who was crying?

*Ai đang khóc?*

*She was.*

*Cô ấy.*

\* Cách dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn:

*Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn được dùng để diễn tả:*

**a. Hành động đang xảy ra ở một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.**

**Ex:** What were you doing at this time yesterday?

*Hôm qua, vào giờ này anh đang làm gì?*

**b. Hành động đã xảy ra và kéo dài trong một khoảng thời gian xác định trong quá khứ.**

**Ex:** I was painting all day yesterday.

*Tôi vẽ suốt ngày hôm qua.*

**c. Một hành động xảy ra và diễn biến liên tục từ đầu đến cuối của một sự kiện, toàn bộ thời gian được sắp xếp trước và được thực hiện một cách trọn vẹn.**

**Ex:** The fair was holding from Monday to Friday.

*Hội chợ tổ chức từ thứ Hai đến thứ Sáu. (đã và đang tổ chức)*

**d. Một hành động đang diễn ra trong quá khứ thì một hành động khác xảy đến, và thường được nối với nhau bằng liên từ **when**.**

**Ex:** I was washing my hair **when** the phone rang yesterday.

*Hôm qua, tôi đang gội đầu thì chuông điện thoại reng.*

**e. Hai hay nhiều hành động xảy ra song song trong quá khứ, và thường được nối với nhau bằng liên từ **while**.**

**Ex:** My father was watching television **while** my mother was cooking dinner.

*Ba tôi đang xem ti vi trong khi mẹ tôi đang nấu bữa tối.*

**Lưu ý:**

- Khi có hai sự kiện xảy ra trong quá khứ, sự kiện nào xảy ra dài hơn ta dùng quá khứ tiếp diễn, sự kiện nào xảy ra ngắn hơn ta dùng quá khứ đơn, và trong những tình huống như vậy thường có liên từ **when** để nối hai câu.

- Khi hai hành động xảy ra cùng một lúc, cùng một thời gian ở quá khứ ta dùng thì quá khứ tiếp diễn cho cả hai hành động, và trong những tình huống như vậy thường có liên từ **while** để nối hai câu.

## 2. The use of present continuous tense with always

Trạng từ **always** có thể được dùng với thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để diễn tả:

• Hành động được lặp đi lặp lại trong quá khứ gây cho người nói sự bức mình khó chịu.

**Ex:** She's always borrowing me money.

*Cô ta cứ luôn luôn mượn tiền của tôi.*

• Hành động hoặc sự việc tình cờ xảy ra rất thường xuyên.

**Ex:** I'm always meeting Miss Hoa in the bookstore.

*Tôi luôn luôn gặp cô Hoa ở nhà sách.*

• Hành động có tính liên tục.

**Ex:** She's always working.

*Cô ấy làm việc suốt.*

## II. EXERCISES

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

- |                       |                   |                  |                 |
|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. <u>double</u>   | B. <u>cloudy</u>  | C. <u>about</u>  | D. <u>our</u>   |
| 2. A. <u>brochure</u> | B. <u>machine</u> | C. <u>check</u>  | D. <u>chef</u>  |
| 3. A. <u>both</u>     | B. <u>bathe</u>   | C. <u>clothe</u> | D. <u>cloth</u> |
| 4. A. <u>include</u>  | B. <u>pudding</u> | C. <u>true</u>   | D. <u>flu</u>   |
| 5. A. <u>sing</u>     | B. <u>finger</u>  | C. <u>green</u>  | D. <u>ink</u>   |

**Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                                      |                                       |                                |                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. i <u>nc</u> l <u>u</u> d <u>e</u> | 2. S <u>ui</u> t <u>ab</u> l <u>e</u> | 3. co <u>f</u> e o <u>v</u> er |                 |
| 4. t <u>u</u> ck <u>e</u> t          | 5. d <u>u</u> b <u>e</u>              | 6. <u>i</u> ghts <u>ei</u> g   |                 |
| 7. h <u>m</u> id                     | 8. v <u>l</u> ca <u>o</u>             | 9. la <u>a</u>                 | 10. po <u>r</u> |

**Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |                             |                          |                            |                           |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. ov <u>r</u> h <u>e</u> d | 2. <u>h</u> rf           | 3. p <u>i</u> so <u>o</u>  |                           |
| 4. c <u>r</u> v <u>o</u>    | 5. s <u>o</u> r <u>o</u> | 6. b <u>o</u> ch <u>re</u> |                           |
| 7. <u>i</u> tu <u>te</u>    | 8. <u>w</u> f <u>l</u>   | 9. te <u>ri</u> le         | 10. s <u>i</u> c <u>o</u> |



**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. h\_ndb\_g
2. r\_inc\_at
3. r\_gu\_arl\_
4. m\_na\_es
5. s\_pp\_se
6. a\_se\_ce
7. \_mp\_oye\_
8. f\_oa\_ing
9. a\_ree\_ent
10. ac\_or\_ing

**Task 5. Complete the conversation with the words given in the box.**

some time

by myself

travel abroad

vacation plans

any plans

Tom: Have you made any (1) \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Linda: Yes, I have. I'm going to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ .  
Tom: When are you going to leave ?  
Linda: I'm not sure. Maybe I will leave at the end of June. How about you ? Do you have (3) \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
Tom: Well, my aunt lives in Florida. I'm going to visit her and enjoy swimming there.  
Linda: That's great. Is anyone going to travel with you?  
Tom: No, I need (4) \_\_\_\_\_ alone. I'm going to travel (5) \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Task 6. Underline the correct verb form in the following sentences.**

1. She took / was taking a photograph while she drank / was drinking beer.
2. Mrs. Lan was seeing / saw an accident while she was waiting / waited for a bus.
3. The light went / was going out while Nam and I were writing / wrote an essay.
4. We were sitting / sat in the garden when it started / was starting to rain.
5. Mrs. Quyen was cooking / cooked in the kitchen while her children were playing / played in the yard.

**Task 7. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.**

- On Tuesday, Ann (1) \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) her handbag on the train. As the train (2) \_\_\_\_\_ (move) away, she suddenly (3) \_\_\_\_\_ (remember) it. She (4) \_\_\_\_\_ (go) after the train, but it (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (travel) too fast and she (6) \_\_\_\_\_ (miss) it.  
- Yesterday, when he (7) \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) home, the sun (8) \_\_\_\_\_ (shine). He (9) \_\_\_\_\_ (not bring) the raincoat with him. But while he (10) \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) for the bus, it (11) \_\_\_\_\_ (start) to rain heavily.

**Task 8. Fill in each blank with a correct preposition.**

1. Better method of refrigeration depends .....engineers.
2. Do you have interest ..... Mathematics?
3. That is very kind .....you to help me.
4. I didn't know John was married ..... Ann.
5. Do you believe ..... God?
6. What is the reason ..... your absence?
7. I'm really proud ..... my mother?
8. Are you good ..... repairing cars, John?
9. I sometimes dream .....having enough free time to have a rest.
10. He rarely speaks .....his difficulties.

**Task 9. Rewrite the sentences with the words given so that it remains the meaning.**

1. They have no reasons to complain about our behavior.  
There's no .....
2. "Try to cut down on your drinking" I said to him.  
I suggested .....
3. Nobody has told me about that.  
I .....
4. They have sold that old house.  
That old house .....
5. Lan Hives quite near her aunt's house.  
Lan doesn't .....
6. People think that your students broke the window.  
It is .....
7. She graduated three years ago.  
It is .....
8. It looks like rain to me.  
I .....

**Task 10. Fill each space with a correct form of the word in the brackets.**

1. Workers demand prompt ..... from the employers. (pay)
2. What do you call the ..... relation among countries? (nation)
3. He cycled ..... and had an accident. (careless)
4. During his ..... the family lived in London. (child)



5. To my ..... the monkey peeled a banana and offered it to me. (amaze)
6. .... enough, young Andy passed his mathematic test. (surprise)
7. Their study is getting on ..... (satisfy)
8. People hate him because of his ..... (honest)

**Task 11. Put the verbs into the correct form: Past continuous or Past simple**

1. Nguyen (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for me outside the theater when I (come) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. At four o'clock yesterday morning, we (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ coffee and (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to music at the coffee shop.
3. My younger sister (enter) \_\_\_\_\_ the university one year ago.
4. When the teacher (come) \_\_\_\_\_ in, the students (review) \_\_\_\_\_ their lesson.
5. While I (ride) \_\_\_\_\_ my motorbike on the way to school this morning, my motorbike (break) \_\_\_\_\_ down.

**Task 12. Choose the correct answers to complete the sentences**

1. This time last Sunday we (stay / were staying) at Nha Trang.
2. Lan is never satisfied. He (always complains / is always complaining)
3. You (always watch / are always watching) television. You should do something more active.
4. We (left / was leaving) the coffee shop and (said / were saying) goodbye.
5. I (met / was meeting) a friend when I (did / was doing) the shopping.
6. When I (waited / was waiting) for his call, Lan (called / was calling) me.
7. When I (were / was) in bad situation, he (appears / appeared) and helped me.
8. Last night when I (came / was coming) back home, I (went / was going) to bed immediately.

**Task 13. Change these affirmative sentences into negative sentences and interrogative sentences**

1. They were watching TV at 7 o'clock last night.

\_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_.

2. My mother was cooking in the kitchen.

\_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_.

3. He was listening to music.

\_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_.

4. Nguyen and Hai were talking about football.

\_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_.

5. It was raining outside.

\_\_\_\_\_?

\_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 14. Translate into English**

1. Tối hôm qua anh làm gì khi tôi gọi cho anh?
2. Một cậu bé đang đi xuống cầu thang thì bị trượt chân.
3. Vào lúc này năm ngoái tôi đang nghỉ hè cùng với gia đình tôi ở Đà Lạt.
4. Chúng tôi đang nghe thầy giáo giảng bài thì thầy hiệu trưởng bước vào.
5. Tôi đang xem ti vi thì điện thoại reo.

**Task 15. Arrange the words in correct order. (Hãy sắp xếp những từ sau theo đúng trật tự)**

1. now / planning / are / we / a holiday / for / next / summer.
2. July 15<sup>th</sup> / and / will / return / we / on / July 18<sup>th</sup> / our / holiday / will / begin / on .
3. would / be / grateful / if / some / information / with / charges / of / details / we / you / could / send / us.
4. next / week / birthday / Nhung's fifteenth / is / it.
5. all / world / over / the / governments / trying / are / facilities / to / provide / for / the / poor.

**Task 16. Choose the correct answers**

1. I'd like to \_\_\_\_\_ a ten -minute call to Nha Trang.  
A. make                      B. phone                      C. talk                      D. join
2. Are there any students in that room? \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Yes, there are                      B. No, there is  
C. No, they aren't                      D. No, these are not
3. The room is dirty.  
A. How dirty is the room                      B. How the house is dirty  
C. What dirty is the house                      D. What a dirty room



4. \_\_\_\_\_? – I am a receptionist.
- A. What job are you \_\_\_\_\_ B. What's your job \_\_\_\_\_
- C. What are you doing \_\_\_\_\_ D. How is your job \_\_\_\_\_
5. Vietnamese students have a \_\_\_\_\_ summer vacation every year.
- A. three-months \_\_\_\_\_ B. three-month \_\_\_\_\_
- C. month three \_\_\_\_\_ D. three months \_\_\_\_\_

**Task 17. Complete the following sentences with the suitable prepositions**

1. They are talking \_\_\_\_\_ the next Olympic Games.
2. The children were delighted \_\_\_\_\_ the TV programme last night.
3. I'm always interested \_\_\_\_\_ the reason why he left here early.
4. These goods are free \_\_\_\_\_ duty.
5. Do you approve \_\_\_\_\_ your younger sister's career?

**Task 18. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences**

1. He gave me a piece of cheese. He put the \_\_\_\_\_ of cheese in his pocket. (packet / bar / bit)
2. Foreign language \_\_\_\_\_ not an easy subject for everybody. (are / is / aren't)
3. Some people have difficulty in making \_\_\_\_\_ understood. (them / themselves / oneself)
4. It's a public holiday next month.  
Yes, I know. \_\_\_\_\_ anything special? (are you doing / Do you do / will you do)
5. I'm trying to move this cupboard, but it's very heavy. Well, \_\_\_\_\_ you, then. (I'll help / I'm going to help / I help)

**Task 19. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences by using "the structure enough"**

1. swim / the / deep / in / to / river / **enough** / Is ?
2. I / money / got / pay / to / taxi / for / haven't / **enough** / a.
3. kettle / fire / a / isn't / the / hot / **enough** / to / boil.
4. food / table / there / on / isn't / **enough** / the.
5. to / **enough** / aren't / old / 14 / you / at / alcohol / buy / the / age / of

**Task 20. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital**

1. I'm going to apply for a \_\_\_\_\_ to attend an English language summer course abroad. **SCHOLAR**
2. My house, though small, is very \_\_\_\_\_ for the bus station. **CONVENIENCE**.
3. The job sounds interesting. I think I'd better write a letter of \_\_\_\_\_ for more detail. **APPLY**
4. Mai got poor marks for her homeworks because she hadn't paid much \_\_\_\_\_ in class. **ATTEND**
5. Because it hasn't rained for months, there has been a serious \_\_\_\_\_ of fresh water. **SHORT**

**Unit 13. FESTIVALS**

**CÁC LỄ HỘI**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Reported speech**

Lời nói gián tiếp là lời nói tường thuật lại ý của người khác.

**Ex:** He said, "I want to watch TV."

*Anh ta nói: "Tôi muốn xem ti vi"*

He said he wanted to watch TV.

*Anh ta nói anh ta muốn xem ti vi.*

☐ Muốn đổi một câu trần thuật từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp ta thực hiện các bước sau:

**a. Sequence of tenses**

• Khi động từ giới thiệu (**say, tell**) ở thì hiện tại thì không có sự thay đổi thì, trong câu nói gián tiếp.

**Ex:** She says: "The film is very good."

→ She says that the film is very good.

She says: "He will come tomorrow."

→ She says that he will come tomorrow.



• Khi động từ giới thiệu (**said, told**) ở quá khứ, ta đổi thì ở các câu gián tiếp lùi về một thì như sau:

\* Câu nói trực tiếp **simple present** thì sang câu gián tiếp **simple past**

<b>present continuous</b>	<b>past continuous</b>
simple past	past perfect
present perfect	past perfect
past continuous	past perfect continuous
simple future	would/should + bare infinitive
must	had to + V-bare infinitive

**Ex:** He said: "I **am** a student."

He said that he **was** a student.

• Khi chúng ta muốn lặp lại lời nói của một người nào đó một cách gián tiếp, chúng ta phải thay đổi tất cả các đại từ để hòa hợp với câu nói.

**Ex:** Tom said: "I am going away on Thursday."

Tom said that he was going away on Thursday.

▪ Trong việc biến đổi câu từ câu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp đặc biệt phải chú ý đến ngôi thứ.

▪ Ngôi thứ nhất phải đổi sang ngôi thứ ba, để cùng một ngôi với chủ ngữ trong mệnh đề chính.

<b>Ngôi thứ nhất</b>		<b>Ngôi thứ ba</b>
I	→	he/she
me	→	him/her
my	→	his/her
mine	→	his/her
myself	→	himself/herself
we	→	they
us	→	them
our	→	their
ours	→	theirs
ourselves	→	themselves

**Lưu ý:** Khi kể lại chính câu nói của mình thì đại từ và tính từ sở hữu không thay đổi.

**Ex:** I said: "I love my family very much."

→ I said that I loved my family very much.

\* Một số trạng từ thời gian, chỉ định từ cũng thay đổi như sau:

<b>Câu trực tiếp</b>	<b>Câu gián tiếp</b>
this	→ that
these	→ those
now	→ then
here	→ there
today	→ that day
tomorrow	→ the next day, the following day
yesterday	→ the day before
last week/year	→ the previous week/year

**Ex:** They said: "We spent our holiday here last year."

→ They said that they had spent their holiday there the previous year.

\* **Say and tell**

Say to someone → tell someone

**Ex:** She **said to** me: "I'm very tired."

→ She **told** me that she was very tired.

## 2. Compound noun (Danh từ kép)

Danh từ kép có thể được thành lập bởi sự kết hợp một danh từ với một danh động từ.

**a. Noun + Gerund** (Danh từ + danh động từ) = **Compound noun** (Danh từ kép)

**Ex:**

<b>Noun</b>	<b>Gerund</b>	<b>Compound noun</b>
rice	cooking	rice – cooking (việc nấu nướng)
fire	making	fire – making (việc nhóm lửa)
lorry	driving	lorry – driving (việc lái xe hơi)
clothes	washing	clothes – washing (việc giặt giũ)

**Lưu ý:** Một danh động từ ghép với một danh từ, thường thì có một danh từ chính chỉ mục đích đứng trước danh động từ.

**b. Gerund + Noun** (Danh động từ + danh từ) = **Compound noun** (Danh từ kép)

**Ex:**

<b>Gerund</b>	<b>Noun</b>	<b>Compound noun</b>
running	shoes	running – shoes (giày chạy bộ)
living	room	living – room (phòng khách)



**Lưu ý:** Khi chúng ta sử dụng một danh động từ ghép với một danh từ, chúng ta có thể đoán nghĩa được rằng việc đó có liên quan đến danh từ (danh từ đó được dùng để làm gì).

### 3. Causative form

- Khi chúng ta muốn nhờ ai hoặc bảo ai làm điều gì, chúng ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

**Subject + have + object (person) + bare infinitive**

**Ex:** I had my brother paint my room last week.

*Tuần trước tôi nhờ anh tôi sơn giùm tôi căn phòng.*

I will have my younger sister take me to the airport.

*Tôi sẽ bảo em gái tôi đưa tôi đến phi trường.*

**Subject + have + object (things) + V<sub>3/ed</sub>**

**Ex:** I had my room painted last week by my brother.

*Tuần trước, tôi nhờ anh tôi sơn giùm căn phòng.*

### 4. How long ago + did + subject ?

- Khi muốn hỏi một người nào đó sống ở một nơi nào đó, hay một việc nào đó tồn tại được bao lâu, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

**How long ago + did + subject...?**

**Ex:** How long ago did the Christmas tree come to the USA?

*Cây Nô-en du nhập vào nước Mỹ cách đây bao lâu?*

The Christmas tree came to the USA in the 1800s.

*Cây Nô-en đến Mỹ vào những năm 1800.*

How long ago did you live here?

*Anh đã định cư ở đây cách đây bao lâu?*

I lived here since 1992.

*Tôi định cư ở đây từ năm 1992.*

## II. EXERCISES

### Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?

1. A. award B. participate C. start D. farmer
2. A. urge B. unit C. use D. university
3. A. position B. possible C. prison D. season
4. A. council B. shoulder C. surround D. found
5. A. market B. collect C. event D. separate

### Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. f\_st\_v\_l
2. p\_tt\_ry
3. f\_tc\_
4. u\_se\_
5. y\_ll
6. pr\_vio\_s ye\_r
7. t\_am\_ate
8. s\_par\_te
9. hu\_k
10. u\_ge

### Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. j\_dg\_
2. c\_un\_il
3. t\_il\_r
4. p\_me\_ran\_te
5. \_hir\_tm\_s
6. \_ec\_ra\_e
7. \_ar\_go\_d
8. s\_re\_d
9. \_hro\_gho\_t
10. d\_n

### Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. \_anta Cla\_s
2. \_atr\_n sai\_t
3. c\_mp\_titio\_
4. p\_ofes\_or
5. j\_l\_y
6. j\_mb\_e
7. m\_shro\_m
8. pl\_mb\_r
9. cr\_w\_d
10. \_anu\_al

### Task 5. Choose the correct words in the box to fill in each blank, then practice with your partner.

Father Christmas	sorts of things	games
celebrate	Christmas pudding	nice
presents	family	lunch
Christmas Eve		

**Huan:** Christmas is coming. How do you (1) \_\_\_\_\_ it?

**Mai:** Christmas is a (2) \_\_\_\_\_ thing for us. I usually have my parents and my brother.

**Huan:** What (3) \_\_\_\_\_ do you do?

**Mai:** On (4) \_\_\_\_\_ we go to church for the midnight carol service. Then on Christmas Day the children open their presents from (5) \_\_\_\_\_. We have (6) \_\_\_\_\_ about 3 o'clock - turkey and (7) \_\_\_\_\_, of course. Then after that we open the family (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and then usually play (9) \_\_\_\_\_ and watch a film on TV.

**Huan:** Do you like Christmas?

**Mai:** Yes, it's very (10) \_\_\_\_\_ for the children.

### Task 6. Open the brackets with the correct tense or correct form of the verbs.

1. When I saw my cousin last week, he looked (worry) .....
2. My knees (knock) ..... as I stood up to give a speech. I had never given a speech before.
3. Ring me up as soon as you (get) ..... home this evening.
4. How many times ..... you (be) ..... to London this year?



5. This house (build) ..... 3 years ago.
6. You (see) them lately? .....
7. They (not speak) ..... to each other since they (quarrel) .....
8. I refused (wait) ..... for him.
9. There are some letters (write) ..... today.
10. We're tired of (work) .....for low wages.

**Task 7. Choose the best answer for the sentences by circling the letter A, B, C or D.**

1. This is the book that I want you to read .....  
A. all      B. through      C. across      D. quick
2. I can't hear what you are saying. Could you ..... louder, please?  
A. say      B. speak      C. tell      D. shout
3. These are students who have to ..... for the exam.  
A. stand      B. take      C. sit      D. do
4. I was very ..... of all the advice you gave me.  
A. famous      B. good      C. fond      D. angry
5. You mustn't stop your bicycle within the limit of ..... crossing.  
A. pedestrian      B. walker's      C. on foot      D. customer
6. What do you do when your passport has .....?  
A. finished      B. ended      C. expired      D. been unvalued
7. I had to keep my daughter from school today because she had a ..... of 39°C.  
A. temperature      B. fever      C. headache      D. cold
8. Let's go and visit Jane and Kate tonight. It's been ages since we last ..... them.  
A. seen      B. saw      C. heard      D. talked

**Task 8. Change the sentences from the active to the passive.**

1. They grow coffee in Kenya.  
.....
2. They publish The Times newspaper in London.  
.....
3. I will write the letter.  
.....
4. They transport oranges from Valencia to Germany in special crates.  
.....

5. They are sending the parcel by sea.  
.....
6. They are destroying the forests in Indonesia.  
.....
7. The shark ate the man.  
.....
8. The arsonist started the fire.  
.....
9. The police took him away.  
.....
10. They've treated him very well.  
.....

**Task 9. Change these sentences in to the passive or active so that they remain the meaning.**

1. They have just built a new church near my house.  
.....
2. They will laugh at you if you wear that silly hat.  
.....
3. Tobacco was grown thousands of years ago.  
.....
4. People say that he is the best doctor.  
.....
5. She bought that house in 1980.  
.....
6. Most of the questions were answered by Nam.  
.....

**Task 10. Match a word in column A with a word in column B to make a compound word. One word in column B can match more than one word in column A.**

A	B	Compound word
mountain	eating	1. ....
fire	making	2. <i>fire making</i>
tree	climbing	3. ....
house	conditioning	4. ....



TV	cleaning	5. ....
cock	planting	6. ....
pie	watching	7. ....
film	fighting	8. ....
dress		9. ....
air		10. ....

**Task 11. Change the following sentences into the passive**

1. People didn't organize this festival some years ago.
2. Someone broke the sink in the kitchen.
3. They cut grass in our garden twice a week.
4. People build new houses in this city every year.
5. They have cancelled the trip.

**Task 12. Change the following sentences into reported speech**

1. Nguyen said to Van, "I can see you tomorrow."
2. Nga said, "I can't cook."
3. Van said, "I have two brothers."
4. Nam said, "I'm thirsty."
5. Hong said, "I am a student."

**Task 13. Choose the correct answer**

1. Liz is very \_\_\_\_\_ in the water-fetching contest.  
A. interest                      B. interested  
C. interesting                  D. interests
2. I called Lan to make \_\_\_\_\_ of the time of her arrival.  
A. sure                              B. right  
C. truth                              D. true
3. Many years ago, Christmas songs \_\_\_\_\_ for people in towns and villages.  
A. were performed              B. performed  
C. were performing              D. were being performed
4. She bought a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ on her last trip to Nha Trang.  
A. anniversaries                  B. entertainments  
C. souvenirs                      D. celebrations
5. I'm not sure what size I am. Can I \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. take them in                      B. try them on  
C. wear them on                      D. check them

**Task 14. Arrange these words in their correct order to make sentences**

1. I / please / tell / 6 o'clock / will / her / call / at / her.
2. bread / get / some / to / think / I / I / must / go / the / to / baker's.
3. Mr. Robinson / the / festival / said / that / he / very / much / enjoyed.
4. Six / contest / team / each / from / people / took / part / in / rice-cooking / the.
5. to / Japan / last year / were / how many / tons / rice / of / exported?

**Task 15. Translate into English**

1. Tên của lễ hội là gì? Lễ hội được tổ chức ở đâu? Lễ hội đã kéo dài bao lâu?
2. Lễ Nô-en là một lễ hội quan trọng tại nhiều quốc gia trên khắp thế giới.
3. Bạn nghĩ gì về lễ hội đó?
4. Những miếng gỗ được dùng để nhóm lửa.
5. Cuộc thi nhóm lửa có gì đặc biệt không?

**Task 16. Rewrite the following sentences as indirect speech**

1. "Don't talk in class!" the teacher told us.
2. "Do not make so much noise in the library" the librarian told them.
3. "Bring the table here, Nga" Huong said.
4. "Please, take out the rubbish" Mrs. Huong told her son.
5. "Who is playing next week?" he asked.
6. I said to Nga, "Lend me your pen for a moment!"
7. He said to the liftman, "Take me up to the 33<sup>rd</sup> floor!"
8. She said to us, "Do whatever you like"

**Task 17. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences**

1. He hasn't got any money. I haven't got any \_\_\_\_\_. (too / either / neither)
2. He is a highly intelligent boy, \_\_\_\_\_ he is very lazy. (but / and / so)
3. If An \_\_\_\_\_ more friendly, she would have more friends. (had / had been / was)
4. Could I have a word with you, please?  
Sorry, I'm in hurry. My train \_\_\_\_\_ in fifteen minutes. (leaves / will leave / is going to leave)
5. Please let Nga \_\_\_\_\_ with you. (go / to go / goes)



Task 18. Choose the suitable prepositions to complete the sentences

- 1. I'm looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ hearing from you.
- 2. I prefer dogs \_\_\_\_\_ cats. I hate cats.
- 3. We have lived in this city \_\_\_\_\_ 1993.
- 4. My father turned the television \_\_\_\_\_ to see the weather forecast.
- 5. I find it difficult \_\_\_\_\_ get up early.

Task 19. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital

- 1. Ha Long Bay was \_\_\_\_\_ by UNESCO as a World Heritage Site.  
**RECOGNITION**
- 2. It's difficult to find \_\_\_\_\_ in this city. **ACCOMMODATE**
- 3. The town now becomes the Buddhist \_\_\_\_\_ center of the whole country. **RELIGION**
- 4. The area \_\_\_\_\_ the town used to be flooded. **SURROUND**
- 5. Television is one of the most important \_\_\_\_\_ of the 20th century. **INVENT**

Task 20. Complete the sentences by using during / by / until / at / on or in

- 1. Please don't touch anything early \_\_\_\_\_ the police come.
- 2. I'd be free by 5 p.m. If the meeting doesn't end \_\_\_\_\_ time, I'll have to make my apologies and leave.
- 3. She was reluctant to help us at first, but \_\_\_\_\_ the end, she agreed to do what she could.
- 4. \_\_\_\_\_ the time you get letter, I'll be in Da Lat.
- 5. I am having a date \_\_\_\_\_ Thursday.
- 6. \_\_\_\_\_ the summer, Lan usually takes a part time job.

Unit 14. WONDERS OF THE WORLD

CÁC KỲ QUAN CỦA THẾ GIỚI

I. GRAMMAR

1. Direct question

Muốn đổi một câu hỏi trực tiếp sang một câu gián tiếp, ta đổi theo các bước sau:

a. Đổi thành **said / said to / asked +(object), wanted to know / wondered / inquired.**

b. Nếu câu hỏi bắt đầu bằng các từ để hỏi **what, who, where, how...** ta giữ nguyên các từ này khi đổi sang câu gián tiếp.

Ex: He said: "**What** are you doing, Nga?"  
→ He asked Nga **what** she was doing.

c. **Reported Yes/No questions.** Tương thuật câu hỏi Yes/No:

Subject + asked + O + if/whether + subject + verb...

Để tường thuật lại ý nghĩa của câu nói **có - không**, chúng ta sử dụng **if** hoặc **whether**. Câu có sử dụng **if** có nghĩa là: có phải..., không biết, liệu, thử...

Ex: He **said to** me, "Are you hungry?"  
He **asked** me **if** I was hungry.  
He **asked** me, "Will you help me?"  
He **asked** me **whether** I would help him.

Lưu ý: Khi đổi sang câu hỏi gián tiếp sẽ không còn hình thức câu hỏi. Mọi hình thức thay đổi về thì (tense), trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian (adverbs of time), hay đại từ (pronouns) đều giống như đã thực hiện trong câu trình bày (Unit 13).

Ex: He said to me "Did you go out last night?"  
He asked me if I had gone out the previous night.

d. Question words before to-infinitive

Khi theo sau một trạng từ nghi vấn hay đại từ nghi vấn, **to-infinitive** tương đương với mệnh đề phụ.

Ex: What to do = What I am to do

Clause +	where	} + to infinitive
	when	
	how	
	why	
	what	



**Ex:** I don't know what to do.

*Tôi không biết phải làm gì.*

I don't know what to say.

*Tôi không biết phải nói gì.*

She told me the reason why to be late.

*Cô ta nói cho tôi biết lý do tại sao trễ.*

- Để diễn tả cách thức hay thể cách, ta thường sử dụng **to infinitive** theo sau **know how**.

**know how to + infinitive**

**Ex:** I don't know how to get the airport.

*Tôi không biết làm thế nào để đến được sân bay.*

- **How** cũng được dùng tương tự sau động từ **forget, learn**.

**Ex:** I've forgotten how to read.

*Tôi đã quên cách đọc.*

You must learn how to be patient.

*Bạn phải học kiên nhẫn là thế nào.*

Tell me how to improve the pronunciation.

*Hãy chỉ giúp tôi cách cải thiện cách phát âm.*

**2. Verbs that can be followed by to-infinitive**

**a. Affirmative form**

**Subject + verb + to-infinitive**

**Ex:** I'll try to be on time.

*Tôi sẽ cố gắng đúng giờ.*

**b. Negative form**

**Subject + verb + not + to-infinitive**

**Ex:** I hope not to be late.

*Tôi hy vọng là không trễ.*

**c. Interrogative form**

**Do/Does/Did + subject + verb + to infinitive?**

**Ex:** Do you want to listen to the music?

*Bạn có muốn nghe nhạc không?*

**d. Wh-questions**

What  
Where  
How  
Why  
When

**+ do/does/did + subject + verb + to infinitive**

**Ex:** How did you manage to finish all your work?

*Bạn xoay sở bằng cách nào mà làm xong hết công việc vậy?*

**□ Cách dùng:**

Những động từ thường diễn tả ước muốn hay khao khát (**wish** hay **desire**), thái độ, quan điểm, cảm nghĩ thì thường theo sau các động từ như: **hope, expect, seem, want, would like...**

**Ex:** I hope to see him again.

*Tôi hy vọng sẽ gặp lại anh ta một lần nữa.*

**To- infinitive** theo sau các động từ tiêu biểu như:

<b>agree</b>	<i>đồng ý</i>	I agreed to go with her.	<i>Tôi đồng ý đi với cô ấy.</i>
<b>appear</b>	<i>dường như</i>	They appeared to be sad.	<i>Họ dường như buồn.</i>
<b>arrange</b>	<i>sắp xếp</i>	He arranged to meet her.	<i>Anh ấy sắp xếp gặp cô.</i>
<b>ask</b>	<i>yêu cầu</i>	I was asked to leave now.	<i>Tôi được yêu cầu phải đi ngay.</i>
<b>become</b>	<i>trở nên</i>	It became to grow bigger.	<i>Nó bắt đầu lớn dần lên.</i>
<b>beg</b>	<i>cầu xin</i>	He begged to get more food.	<i>Anh ta xin thêm thức ăn.</i>
<b>begin</b>	<i>bắt đầu</i>	It began to rain heavily.	<i>Trời bắt đầu mưa nặng hạt.</i>
<b>choose</b>	<i>chọn lựa</i>	She chose to stand behind me.	<i>Cô ta chọn đứng sau tôi.</i>
<b>dare</b>	<i>dám</i>	Mary didn't dare to go out.	<i>Mary không dám ra ngoài.</i>



<b>decide</b>	quyết định	<i>She decided to leave.</i>	Cô ấy quyết định ra đi.
<b>fail</b>	thất bại, không làm được	<i>He failed to talk to her.</i>	Anh ấy không nói chuyện với cô ấy được.
<b>intend</b>	dự định	<i>She intended to stay.</i>	Cô ấy dự định ở lại.
<b>need</b>	cần	<i>You need to go now.</i>	Bạn cần đi bây giờ.
<b>offer</b>	ngỏ ý	<i>He offered to do it for me.</i>	Anh ấy ngỏ ý làm điều đó cho tôi.
<b>plan/ tend</b>	dự định, lên kế hoạch	<i>They plan to build the bridge here.</i>	Họ dự định xây cầu ở đây.
<b>promise</b>	hứa	<i>I promised to buy her a book.</i>	Tôi hứa mua cho cô ấy một quyển sách.
<b>refuse</b>	từ chối	<i>He refused to tell me why.</i>	Anh ta từ chối không nói cho tôi biết tại sao.
<b>seem</b>	dường như	<i>He seemed to be rich.</i>	Anh ấy dường như rất giàu có.
<b>try</b>	cố gắng	<i>He tried to get to the top.</i>	Anh ấy cố leo lên đỉnh.
<b>volunteer</b>	tình nguyện	<i>They volunteered to stay.</i>	Họ tình nguyện ở lại.
<b>wait</b>	chờ đợi	<i>She waited to win.</i>	Cô ta chờ chiến thắng.
<b>want</b>	muốn	<i>Mai wants to dance more.</i>	Mai muốn nhảy nữa.
<b>wish</b>	ao ước	<i>She wishes to have more money.</i>	Cô ấy ước có nhiều tiền hơn.
<b>would like</b>	muốn	<i>He would like to have a cup of tea.</i>	Anh ấy muốn uống trà.

- Những động từ có thể dùng **To-infinitive** hay **gerund** mà không có sự thay đổi nhiều về nghĩa.

<b>continue</b>	tiếp tục
<b>like</b>	thích
<b>love</b>	yêu

<b>prefer</b>	thích hơn
<b>hate</b>	ghét
<b>attempt</b>	cố gắng
<b>neglect</b>	phớt lờ
<b>propose</b>	đề nghị

- Những động từ có thể dùng cả **To-infinitive** và **gerund** nhưng có sự thay đổi về nghĩa.

1*. <b>remember</b>	nhớ
<b>forget</b>	+ to-infinitive quên
<b>regret</b>	tiếc

(khi đề cập đến hành động chưa xảy ra.)

**Ex:** Don't forget to phone me when you arrive in New York.

Đừng quên gọi cho tôi khi bạn đến New York.

2*. <b>remember</b>	
<b>forget</b>	+ V-ing
<b>regret</b>	

(khi đề cập đến hành động đã xảy ra.)

**Ex:** I regret telling lies to her.

Tôi tiếc đã nói dối cô ấy.

- 3\*. **stop + to-infinitive** : dừng một việc để làm một việc khác
- stop + V-ing** : dừng một việc đang làm

**Ex:** We stop talking to do our exercise.

Chúng tôi ngừng nói chuyện để làm bài tập.

### 3. Revision

- Khi muốn hỏi một ai đó chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra mà không thể làm, chúng ta sẽ dùng cấu trúc sau:

**What happen if I/we can't do sth?**

**Ex:** What happens if we can't complete this work on time?

Chuyện gì sẽ xảy ra nếu chúng ta không thể hoàn tất công việc đúng hạn?



## II. EXERCISES

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

1. A. adjust      B. bulletin      C. husk      D. coconut
2. A. challenging      B. install      C. small      D. tall
3. A. jack      B. carol      C. manual      D. patron
4. A. restrict      B. degree      C. requirement      D. freshman
5. A. printer      B. restrict      C. native      D. requirement

**Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. w\_nd\_r      2. c\_n\_on      3. g\_es\_
4. c\_ys\_al-cle\_r      5. re\_f      6. j\_ng\_e
7. cl\_e      8. c\_ral s\_a      9. sn\_rk\_l      10. a\_ong\_t

**Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. c\_mp\_le      2. s\_atu\_      3. p\_ra\_id
4. cl\_im      5. r\_ligi\_us      6. s\_rro\_nd
7. r\_yal      8. r\_ler      9. r\_ng\_r      10. hi\_e

**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

1. e\_ge      2. m\_mo\_ia      3. t\_in to\_ers
4. \_xp\_diti\_n      5. b\_eak\_ak\_ng      6. \_nq\_ired
7. r\_fu\_e      8. v\_lu\_te\_r      9. n\_gl\_ct      10. p\_op\_se

**Task 5. Fill in each gap with one of the words given in the box.**

weather	area	famous	million	story
assumed	city	heart	skyscraper	outranked

Chicago is the third largest (1) \_\_\_\_\_ in the United States. Over three (2) \_\_\_\_\_ people live in the two-hundred-and-twenty-five-square-mile (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of Chicago.

The world's first (4) \_\_\_\_\_ was constructed in Chicago in 1885. Today, some of the world's tallest and most famous skyscrapers are found in the city. Located in the (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of the city is the one-hundred-and-ten (6) \_\_\_\_\_ Sears Tower, which is among the most (7) \_\_\_\_\_ skyscrapers ever built.

Chicago is often called "The Windy City". It is (8) \_\_\_\_\_ that this is due to the city's (9) \_\_\_\_\_, but in the 1990s 11 major U.S. cities (10) \_\_\_\_\_ Chicago for average annual wind speed.

**Task 6. Complete the sentences by using the infinitives in the box.**

to eat	to buy	to watch	to become	to visit
--------	--------	----------	-----------	----------

1. I've decided \_\_\_\_\_ a new apartment.
2. I want \_\_\_\_\_ a ball game on TV after dinner tonight.
3. I don't like peas. I refuse \_\_\_\_\_ them.
4. I would like \_\_\_\_\_ the Grand Canyon.
5. Tommy is only seven, but he intends \_\_\_\_\_ a doctor when he grows up.

**Task 7. Make the questions with the suggestions. The first is done for you.**

1. A. I hope to go to University.  
B. (What/ want/ study?) ..... What do you want to study?
2. A. One of my favourite hobbies is cooking.  
B. (What/ like/ cook?) .....
3. A. I get a terrible headache.  
B. (When/ start/ get/ it?) .....
4. A. We're planning our summer holiday at the moment.  
B. (Where/ think/ go?) .....
5. A. I'm tired.  
B. (What/ like/ to do/ tonight?) .....

**Task 8. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. I enjoy (walk) ..... in the rain.
2. Would you like (have) ..... something (eat) .....
3. I want (see) ..... a film on TV this evening.
4. When did you finish (paint) ..... the kitchen?
5. I hope (earn) ..... some money soon.
6. I began (Earn) ..... English when I was 7.
7. I'm hungry, I don't know where (go) ..... eating.
8. It's difficult (And) ..... a good job.

**Task 9. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. I've decided (stop) ..... smoking.
2. Let's (go) ..... shopping.
3. Would you like something (eat) ..... ?
4. I need a recipe for a cake that's easy (make) .....



5. Lave used (ski) ..... when he was younger but not any more.
6. I go (ski) ..... every winter.
7. My instructor made me (ski) ..... down the steep mountain.
8. I went for a walk (get) ..... some fresh air.
9. It's important (keep) ..... vocabulary records.
10. There used (be) ..... a lot of traffic here but now there isn't a lot any more.

**Task 10. Change these active sentences into passive sentences.**

1. They haven't cleaned the kitchen yet.  
.....
2. A rubber broke the window of the shop.  
.....
3. They didn't punish him for what lie did.  
.....
4. Peter will took after my little brother.  
.....
5. We saw her in Dresden last week.  
.....
6. No one has ever beaten me at chess.  
.....
7. Our uncle takes Susan to hospital.  
.....
8. We have cleaned the car.  
.....
9. The police officers help the children.  
.....
10. People must not leave bicycles in the driveway.  
.....

**Task 11. Change the sentences into reported speech**

1. Tom said: "Have you ever seen this film before?"
2. He said to me: "Why are you so hungry yesterday?"
3. My father said to me: "Did you help your mother with the housework?"
4. Nguyen said to me: "Where are you going for your summer holiday?"
5. She said to me: "Have you finished your work yet?"

6. Hong said, "Is your new baby a boy or a girl, Mrs Huong?"
7. Nguyen said, "How long does it take to get to Ha Noi, Nga?"
8. Tom said, "May I borrow your car, Lan?"

**Task 12. Change the following sentences from passive voice to active voice**

1. The book was taken by Lan.
2. The cakes have been eaten by the boys.
3. All the questions on the paper must be answered .
4. This letter need not to be typed.
5. The room hasn't been used.

**Task 13. Give the correct forms of the words in parentheses to complete the sentences**

1. President Ho Chi Minh Mausoleum (was completed / was completing) on August 29<sup>th</sup>, 1975.
2. What (happens / does happen) if I can't answer the question?
3. I don't know exactly (how many / how much) friends to come to the birthday party.
4. I'm very (bored / boring). Let's go somewhere.
5. I don't know how (to tell / tell) her about it.

**Task 14. Put the verbs into correct form, active or passive**

1. The breakfast (prepare) \_\_\_\_\_ in the early tomorrow morning.
2. The man (bring) \_\_\_\_\_ milk to us every day.
3. Everyone (enjoy) \_\_\_\_\_ the play last night.
4. Is your motorbike still for sale? – No, I (sell) \_\_\_\_\_ it.
5. English (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ in all over the world.

**Task 15. Rewrite the following sentences by using the indirect speech**

1. I asked her, "Do you enjoy your English class?"  
I asked her \_\_\_\_\_.
2. How much does it cost ?  
I asked the shop assitant \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I asked him, "How long does it take to get to Ha Long bay?"  
I asked him \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Why does Tan sing loudly?  
We wondered \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When does the next bus leave?  
Tell me \_\_\_\_\_.



**Task 16. Complete the following sentences by using question words before to-infinitive**

1. Do you know who is going to teach us History?

I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.

2. Where are you going to spend your summer holiday?

I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.

3. What do you want to become in future?

I really don't know \_\_\_\_\_.

4. Please tell me the way to learn English perfectly.

Sure. I'll show you \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Could you tell me the way to the post office?

Sure. I'll show you \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 17. Arrange these words in their correct order to make sentences**

1. playing / in / the / front / yard / is / son / neighbor's / boy / the / my.

2. the / people / all / living / in / this / country / can / speak / both / English / and / Cantonese

3. the / next / me / is / very / kindly / and / intelligent / girl / sitting

4. singer / the / in / music / the / appearing / show / music / is / famous / internationally / last night.

5. tailor / at / the / shirt / made / by / end / the / of / street / the / long / too / is / to / wear / me / for / the.

**Task 18. Translate into English**

1. Tôi hỏi Lan xem cô ấy có biết người anh họ của tôi không?

2. Mai đã hỏi tôi xem ngày mai tôi có đến khu thương mại hay không?

3. Tôi đã hỏi An xem cô ấy có ở nhà tối nay không?

4. Hồng đã hỏi tôi sau giờ học tôi làm gì.

5. Tôi đã hỏi người bán hàng là cái đó giá bao nhiêu?

**Task 19. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in lock capital**

1. You can buy electrical \_\_\_\_\_ at the shop over there. **APPLY**

2. \_\_\_\_\_ should complain if they are not satisfied with the service they receive. **CONSUME**

3. On this \_\_\_\_\_ occasion I'd like to thank you all for your contribution to our success. **JOY**

4. An old \_\_\_\_\_ of my brother's showed me round the city during my stay there. **ACQUAINT**

5. I like him for his \_\_\_\_\_. **GENEROUS**

**Task 20. Choose the suitable words to complete the sentences**

1. My favourite \_\_\_\_\_ at school was history. (topic / subject / class)

2. If she \_\_\_\_\_, she will get a surprise. (comes / will come / came)

3. Our office needs a secretary \_\_\_\_\_ knows how to use various word processing programs. (who / whom / which)

4. This is the fifth time you \_\_\_\_\_ me the same question. (have asked / asked / ask)

5. Many people spend much time per day \_\_\_\_\_ TV. (watch / watching / watch)

**Unit 15. COMPUTERS**

**MÁY ĐIỆN TOÁN**

**I. GRAMMAR**

**1. Present perfect with yet and already**

Thì hiện tại hoàn thành dùng kèm với **already** và **yet** để chỉ sự kiện nào đó đã xảy ra hoặc chưa xảy ra vào một thời điểm không xác định rõ rệt trong quá khứ.

• **Yet** được dùng trong câu hỏi và câu phủ định.

• **Already** được dùng trong câu xác định.

**a. Already**

☐ **Cách dùng:**

\* Chúng ta dùng **already** để chỉ ra rằng một điều gì đó đã xảy ra sớm hơn mong đợi hoặc để nhấn mạnh một hành động đã hoàn tất.

**Ex:**

I have already cleaned the room.

Tôi đã lau dọn phòng rồi.

\* **Already** thường xuất hiện giữa trợ động từ và động từ chính.

**Subject + have/has + already + V<sub>3/ed</sub>**

**Ex:** We have **already** written our reports.

Chúng tôi đã viết xong bản báo cáo của chúng tôi.

**Ex:** I've **already** finished my work.

Tôi đã làm xong việc.



Tuy nhiên **already** cũng có thể xuất hiện ở cuối câu.

Ex: I've read that book **already**.

*Tôi đã đọc xong quyển sách đó.*

b. **Yet**

□ **Cách dùng:**

\* **Yet** chỉ rõ điều gì chưa xảy ra.

Ex: We haven't had dinner yet.

*Chúng tôi chưa ăn tối.*

\* **Yet** xuất hiện ở vị trí cuối câu:

Subject + have/has + not + V<sub>3</sub> + yet

Ex: Has she called you yet?

*Cô ấy đã gọi điện cho bạn chưa?*

## 2. Comparison between the present perfect tense and the simple past tense

a. Thì quá khứ đơn diễn tả hành động đã được hoàn tất ở quá khứ và thời gian được xác định rõ ràng.

Ex: I met him last night.

*Tối hôm qua tôi gặp anh ta.*

• Thì hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trong quá khứ mà thời gian không được xác định rõ ràng.

Ex: She has lost her key.

*Cô ấy đã mất chìa khóa rồi.*

b. Thì quá khứ đơn diễn tả một hành động đã hoàn tất trong quá khứ và không còn liên quan đến hiện tại.

Ex: I lived there for ten years.

*Tôi đã sống ở đó được 10 năm rồi.*

• Thì hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả hành động đã hoàn thành trong khoảng thời gian xác định trong quá khứ.

Ex: I have seen them this morning.

*Sáng hôm nay tôi gặp họ.*

c. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu từ trong quá khứ và còn tiếp tục đến hiện tại.

Ex: My family has lived in Ho Chi Minh City for more than 10 years.

*Gia đình của tôi đã sinh sống ở Thành phố Hồ Chí Minh hơn mười năm nay.*

d. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành cũng diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu ở quá khứ và dừng lại ở lúc nói.

Ex: I haven't seen you for ages.

*Lâu rồi tôi không gặp anh.*

e. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành được dùng để diễn tả một hành động vừa mới xảy ra, trong câu thường có từ **just**.

Ex: She's just called you.

*Cô ấy vừa mới gọi điện cho bạn.*

f. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành được sử dụng để **thông báo một sự việc xảy ra gần đây**.

Ex: Do you know Nga? She has gone to Canada.

*Bạn có biết Nga không? Cô ấy đã đi Canada rồi.*

g. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành được dùng trong những tình huống **hiện hữu trong một thời gian dài và hiện giờ tình huống đó vẫn chưa chấm dứt** và thường đi kèm với từ **always**.

Ex: You've always been my closest friend.

*Bạn lúc nào cũng là người bạn thân thiết nhất của tôi.*

## 3. How to express the same opinion

• Khi muốn diễn đạt trong **câu khẳng định** rằng có cùng ý kiến với một người nào đó, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

So + auxiliary verb + subject

Subject + auxiliary verb + too

Ex: I can speak Chinese.

— So can she.

— She can, too.

*Tôi có thể nói tiếng Trung Quốc. Cô ấy cũng vậy.*

*He sings very well.*

— So does Nga.

— Nga does, too.

*Anh ấy hát rất hay. Nga cũng vậy.*



- Khi muốn diễn đạt trong **câu phủ định** có cùng ý kiến với người khác, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

Neither + auxiliary verb + subject  
Nor + auxiliary verb + subject  
Subject + auxiliary verb + not + either

**Ex:** I didn't watch TV last night.

\_ Nga didn't either.

\_ Neither did Nga.

\_ Nor did Nga.

Tôi đã không xem ti vi tối hôm qua. Nga cũng vậy.

#### 4. Revision

##### a. Để diễn tả sự đồng ý ta có những cách sau:

So do I.

Tôi cũng vậy.

I agree.

Tôi đồng ý.

You are right.

Bạn đúng.

Neither do I.

Tôi cũng không.

##### b. Để diễn tả sự không đồng ý ta có những cách sau:

I disagree.

Tôi không đồng ý

I can't agree with you.

Tôi không thể đồng ý với anh

No, I think..

Không, tôi cho là...

##### c. Để diễn tả sự đồng ý có mức độ ta có những cách sau:

I agree, but...

Tôi đồng ý, nhưng...

Yes, but on the other hand..

Vâng, nhưng mặt khác...

##### d. Để diễn tả ý kiến của mình ta có những cách sau:

I like...

Tôi thích...

I don't like...

Tôi không thích...

I think...

Tôi cho là...

I feel...

Tôi cảm thấy là...

I don't believe...

Tôi không tin...

#### II. EXERCISES

##### Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?

1. A. police B. kitchen C. fix D. restrict
2. A. document B. include C. institute D. canoe
3. A. Englishman B. freshman C. man D. marine
4. A. connect B. concern C. compile D. competition
5. A. twice B. printer C. itinerary D. sign

##### Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. c mp te\_
2. ri te\_
3. d cu ent
4. c nn ct
5. p op r
6. pl g
7. m nu l
8. ua an ee
9. d sa re\_
10. \_ nne es ary

##### Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. \_ hal en e
2. \_ on tor
3. a ju t
4. k ob
5. \_ ele hone l nes
6. r qu reme t
7. f\_esh an
8. \_ am us
9. r str ct
10. b lle in

##### Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.

1. b lle in bo rd
2. i pac\_
3. d gre\_
4. s ept cal
5. \_ osit ve
6. ti e-con umi g
7. a use
8. cl ck
9. i sta l
10. hi hl nd



**Task 5. Complete this newspaper report- using the bold words to fill the gaps.**  
bought, months, two, have, journey, finish, ever, has.

Torn Phillips, A British explorer (1) .....decided to sail across the pacific ocean in a 16 - meter sailboat - It is the first time that any one has (2) .....tried to make the journey in such a small board.

Phillips will make the f0,400 - kilometer journey with six other people. They (3) .....arranged to start the journey in Singapore and (4) .....it in San Francisco the USA. The journey is expected to take about six (5) .....

Before crossing the Pacific Ocean, they have arranged to make (6) .....stops for supplies in Vietnam and Japan. Phillips told reporters that he has just (7) .....a powerful radio. He will use it to communicate with sailing officials on land through out the (8) .....

**Task 6. Open the brackets with the correct tense of the verbs and put: "since, for, ago" in the space.**

1. I (not see) ..... him ..... Christmas.
2. We (be) ..... here ..... two hours.
3. They (live) ..... in this street ..... 1960.
4. My brother (leave) ..... for Moscow a week .....
5. He (not send) ..... me any money ..... last month.
6. He (be) ..... here ..... last January.
7. We (be) ..... there two hours.....
8. I (not see) ..... her ..... I (leave) ..... Hai Phong.

**Task 7. Find out the mistakes in these sentences, underline and then correct them.**

1. Where have you gone last night?
2. I am ill for two days.
3. The rain has ceased yesterday.
4. I have finished my letter last night.
5. They went there once.
6. Do you read "Pick wick papers?" I began the book last week and just finished it.
7. Lend me your rubber. I made a mistake and wished to rub it out.
8. He learns English for 3 years, but he can't even read a newspaper yet.

**Task 8. Choose the right word or phrase to fill in the spaces. Circle a, b, c or d.**

1. Lan ..... in Scotland for 5 years. Now he lives in London.  
A. lived B. has lived C. was living D. has been living
2. "I don't like sweets....."  
A. So do I B. I do, too C. Neither do I D. I do either
3. I can't decide ..... to go on holiday.  
A. what B. where C. whether D. who
4. That fax is .....guarantee so the company will repair it.  
A. on B. in C. of D. under
5. A: "Do you know where .....?" "No, he didn't say."  
B: .....  
A. Tom has gone B. has Tom gone C. did Tom go D. Tom went
6. A: "My father is an architect."  
B: .....  
A. My father is too B. My father is either C. So my father D. My father is
7. A: I think you will win in this competition.  
B: .....  
A. But I B. but I think C. but I do D. but I don't think so
8. A: I can't sing English songs.  
B: .....  
A. So do I B. I do too C. Neither I can D. I can't, either



**Task 9. Make the meaning full sentences with the suggestions and some other additions. The first has been done for you.**

1. I/ live/ this house/ for five years.  
- *I have lived in this house for five years* .....
2. Which / best place/ ever/ be?  
.....
3. That /be/ good meal /it?  
.....
4. It / just/ start / raining.  
.....
5. She/ be/ teacher/since/1990.  
.....
6. We / not be/ to Ho chi Minh City yet.  
.....
7. I / never / visit/ a foreign country.  
.....
8. They / do/ exercises/ yet?  
.....

**Task 10. Rewrite these sentences with the words given so that the meaning is kept unchanged.**

1. When we have finished building the house, we'll plan the garden.  
After the house .....
2. We suggested a lot of things which were all rejected.  
Everything .....
3. Thank you for helping me.  
It was .....
4. They say that you are the best singer in the town.  
You .....
5. The manager told Mary not to use the office phone for personal calls.  
The manager said .....
6. Mr Green asked Bill to come to their dinner last night.  
Mr Green said .....
7. He wanted to buy a new bike but I prevented him from it.  
I prevented .....
8. He wanted to know what my name was.  
He asked me .....

**Task 11. Use the present perfect or simple past to complete the following sentences**

1. Is your boss here? No, he just (go) \_\_\_\_\_ out.
2. Where you (be) \_\_\_\_\_ last Sunday? I (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ my uncle in the country.
3. Welcome to my home. (you /meet) \_\_\_\_\_ ever my brother?
4. I (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ my wallet on the way home last night.
5. He (say) \_\_\_\_\_ goodbye to everybody and (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ home at 8 a.m this morning.
6. I (lose) \_\_\_\_\_ my white gloves. You (see) \_\_\_\_\_ them anywhere?  
No, maybe you (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ them somewhere. When \_\_\_\_\_ you last (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ them?  
I (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ them at the theater last night.  
Perhaps you (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ them at the theater.
7. Have you ever (try) \_\_\_\_\_ to give up smoking?  
Yes, I (try) \_\_\_\_\_ last year, but then I (find) \_\_\_\_\_ that I was getting fat so I (start) \_\_\_\_\_ again.
8. I just (seen) \_\_\_\_\_ to the film War and Peace. You (see) \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
No, I haven't. Is it like the book?  
I (not read) \_\_\_\_\_ the book  
I (read) \_\_\_\_\_ it when I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ at school.  
When Tolstoy (write) \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
He (write) \_\_\_\_\_ it in 1868.

**Task 12. Put these words in their correct order to make sentences**

1. this / run / my / has / brother / company / since / year / last.
2. since / 1998 / football / has / he / played / for / team / this .
3. I / him / known / have / since / was / I / child / a.
4. I / learnt / have / for / 9 months / Japan.
5. since / my / family / lived / has / here / was / I / 11 years old.

**Task 13. Choose the correct answers by using since or for**

1. That's very old bicycle. I've had it \_\_\_\_\_ ages.
2. I have been on holiday \_\_\_\_\_ three days.
3. It is two years \_\_\_\_\_ I had a holiday.
4. My watch hasn't stopped working \_\_\_\_\_ this morning.
5. I have known him \_\_\_\_\_ a long time.



#### Task 14. Sentence transformation

1. He started to collect stamps two years ago.

He has \_\_\_\_\_.

2. We knew each other when we were students.

We have \_\_\_\_\_.

3. My father takes me to the zoo every week.

I \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I have never played a computer game before.

This is \_\_\_\_\_.

5. I haven't seen him since he left the university.

The last time \_\_\_\_\_.

6. This is the best computer I have ever used.

I have never \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Task 15. Translate into English

1. Chú tôi đã quyết định bỏ hút thuốc.

2. Họ đồng ý tổ chức một cuộc họp khác.

3. Họ cần gặp ông chủ của họ.

4. Tôi đang cố gắng ăn kiêng.

5. Tôi không thích đến nha sĩ.

#### Task 16. Change the following sentences into affirmatives, negatives, and questions by using used to

1. I see him every day.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

2. He speaks English very well.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

3. She comes to class early.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

4. She takes the bus every morning.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

5. They go for a walk every Sunday.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

6. They go to the cinema every Saturday.

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

#### Task 17. Put should or shouldn't into each gap

1. Your hair's too long. I think you \_\_\_\_\_ get it cut.

2. Giang works too much. I think she \_\_\_\_\_ take it easy.

3. Nga is too fat. She \_\_\_\_\_ go on a diet.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ I go to bed early and get up early?

5. You \_\_\_\_\_ smoke too much cigarettes. It's not good to your health

#### Task 18. Choose the suitable words to complete the following sentences

1. \_\_\_\_\_ does it take to get to Da Lat from here? (How far / How long / How much)

2. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ in the East and \_\_\_\_\_ in the West. (rises - sets / rises - set / rose - set)

3. My mother and my brother are really looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ you again. (seeing / to see / to seeing)

4. I'll look after the children while you \_\_\_\_\_ dinner. (make / making / made)

5. We'll be late unless we \_\_\_\_\_ now. (leave / don't leave / had left)

#### Task 19. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital

1. Arrange these files in order is a very time \_\_\_\_\_ task.

CONSUME

2. Sign language is till used as a means of \_\_\_\_\_.

COMMUNICATE



3. That kind of material is a wonderful discovery, but they haven't found any \_\_\_\_\_ use for it. **PRACTISE**
4. My brother usually cleans up around the house on the \_\_\_\_\_. **WEEK**
5. The band consists of nine \_\_\_\_\_. **MUSIC**

#### Task 20. Choose the correct answers

1. My father \_\_\_\_\_ in that company for 20 years but he retired last year.  
A. has worked B. worked C. works D. had worked
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ lunch 20 minutes ago.  
A. have had B. has C. have D. had
3. Shopping from home is convenient, especially for people who lead \_\_\_\_\_ lives.  
A. poor B. easy C. busy D. happy
4. Miss Nga is in front of the mirror and look at \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. herself B. himself C. her D. him
5. \_\_\_\_\_ musn't children play with matches? - Because playing with matches can start fire.  
A. Why. B. How C. When D. what

### Unit 16. INVENTIONS

#### NHỮNG PHÁT MINH

#### I. GRAMMAR

##### 1. Sequence markers

Khi muốn kết nối chuỗi các hành động, sự kiện hoặc để chỉ trật tự trước sau trong một quy trình, người nói phải sử dụng các từ sau đây:

**first:** trước hết, trước tiên

**then:** rồi, sau đó, đoạn, lúc đó

**next:** kế đến, tiếp theo đó

**after this:** sau cái này

**after that:** sau đó

**finally:** sau cùng

First, (S) + verb

.....  
Finally, (S) + verb

**Ex:** First, the cocoa beans are dried in the sun. Then they are cleaned in special machines...

*Trước tiên, hạt ca cao được phơi khô. Sau đó chúng được làm sạch trong những cái máy đặc biệt...*

##### 2. Passive forms

##### The passive with place phrases and time phrases

Thông thường, câu chủ động có cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn hoặc thời gian ở vị trí cuối câu. Khi đổi sang câu bị động, những cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn và thời gian vẫn giữ nguyên, không đổi.

• Cụm từ chỉ nơi chốn và thời gian thường xuất hiện là: **on, at** và **in**.

**Ex:**

Active: Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492.

*Năm 1492 Christopher Colombus tìm ra châu Mỹ.*

Passive: America was discovered by Christopher Columbus in 1492.

##### 3. Revision

What do you think ...be for? *Bạn nghĩ... để làm gì?*

• Khi muốn biết suy nghĩ của một người nào đó về đồ vật nào đó được dùng để làm gì, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

What do you think... be for?

**Ex:** What do you think this machine is for?

*Bạn nghĩ cái máy này dùng để làm gì?*

• Khi muốn hỏi ai phát minh ra một vật gì đó, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:

Who was something invented by?

**Ex:** Who was this machine invented by?

*Cái máy này do ai phát minh?*

• Khi muốn hỏi một vật gì được phát minh khi nào hoặc ở đâu, ta dùng cấu trúc sau:



When was something invented?  
Where was something invented?

Ex: When was this machine invented?

Cái máy này được phát minh khi nào?

Where was this machine invented?

Cái máy này được phát minh ở đâu?

## II. EXERCISES

**Task 1. Which underlined part is pronounced differently from the others?**

- |                        |                     |                    |                      |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>crush</u>     | B. <u>push</u>      | C. <u>rush</u>     | D. <u>trust</u>      |
| 2. A. <u>wind</u>      | B. <u>find</u>      | C. <u>mine</u>     | D. <u>grind</u>      |
| 3. A. <u>liquid</u>    | B. <u>stupid</u>    | C. <u>achieve</u>  | D. <u>chicken</u>    |
| 4. A. <u>facsimile</u> | B. <u>smile</u>     | C. <u>quiet</u>    | D. <u>streamline</u> |
| 5. A. <u>surround</u>  | B. <u>microwave</u> | C. <u>together</u> | D. <u>buffalo</u>    |

**Task 2. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |            |                        |                        |
|------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. p_py_us | 2. m_nu_act_re         | 3. p_oc_ss             |
| 4. to_ch   | 5. r_info_ced co_cret_ | 6. li_uef_             |
| 7. _ri_d   | 8. m_ld                | 9. _ac_imi_e 10. cr_sh |

**Task 3. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |               |                  |                   |
|---------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. h_lic_pt_r | 2. lo_dsp_ak_r   | 3. p_oce_ur_      |
| 4. w_od p_lp  | 5. _icr_wa_e     | 6. f_be_          |
| 7. c_nv_y     | 8. co_vey_r be_t | 9. v_t 10. v_cu_m |

**Task 4. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |              |            |                     |
|--------------|------------|---------------------|
| 1. a_plia_ce | 2. to_ste_ | 3. h_ird_yer        |
| 4. _te_sil   | 5. f_rm_nt | 6. _ip_er           |
| 7. th_es_    | 8. r_fi_e  | 9. m_rt_r 10. _aiz_ |

**Task 5. Change ( ) with the letters to make the complete words.**

- |          |                   |                         |
|----------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. _ra_n | 2. f_at_en        | 3. br_n                 |
| 4. c_ip  | 5. p_in_ing pr_ss | 6. in_redi_nt           |
| 7. fi_m  | 8. f_rem_n        | 9. dr_in 10. _he_ical_y |

**Task 6. Fill in each gap with one of the words or phrases given in the box.**

applied	latest	design	discovery	Internet
powers	significant	invented	America	inventive

- Before the washing machine was \_\_\_\_\_, clothes had to be washed by hand.
- What do you think is the most \_\_\_\_\_ invention of the 20th century?
- Has he \_\_\_\_\_ for a patent for his invention yet? It'd protect his rights.
- By whom and when was \_\_\_\_\_ discovered? - By Christopher Columbus in 1492.
- While Isaac Newton was sitting in his garden, he came up with the \_\_\_\_\_ of the law of gravity.
- What is the \_\_\_\_\_ invention of our time? Is it the computer?
- He's a highly \_\_\_\_\_ student. We call him the Edison of our school.
- There is no doubt about his \_\_\_\_\_ of invention. He's designed over 100 things so far.
- If you are the first person to make a new type of machine, or \_\_\_\_\_ a new system, you invent it. If you are the first person to find, see, or understand something, you discover it. You cannot invent something if it already exists.
- Global communication was changed by the invention of the \_\_\_\_\_

**Notes:**

- patent (n) bằng phát minh, bằng sáng chế
- law of gravity: định luật vạn vật hấp dẫn
- global Communication: liên lạc toàn cầu

**Task 7. Fill in each blank with a correct form of the word in the brackets.**

- The \_\_\_\_\_ unit in France was Franc. (money)
- The teacher is pleased with the \_\_\_\_\_ in my work. (improve)
- \_\_\_\_\_ children need good conditions of living. (grow)
- I'm worried about the \_\_\_\_\_ of the children. (safe)
- How much \_\_\_\_\_ is there in my bank account? (money)
- Banks make loans to \_\_\_\_\_ (borrow)
- The United Nation \_\_\_\_\_ is an international one. (organize)
- Workers demand prompt \_\_\_\_\_ from the employers. (pay)



**Task 8. Give the correct form of the words in the brackets into the spaces of the sentences to complete it.**

1. The ancient ..... wrote on a plant called papyrus. (Egypt)
2. There was a strange ..... in the bowl. (mix)
3. The wood pulp is cleaned and ..... whiten. (chemist)
4. The television is one of the most important ..... of the 20<sup>th</sup> century. (invent)
5. Paper was made from wood pulp in the year 105 by a Chinese ..... (office)
6. This manual isn't very ..... (help)

**Task 9. Find out the mistakes in the sentences, underline and correct them.**

Ex: The chair was mended with my father. .... by .....

1. My computer doesn't work. I think that it is broke. ....
2. Everybody knows I like to eat chocolate and ice-cream . ....
3. The teacher is telling the pupils what to use the new equipment. ....
4. Daniel was crossing the road when Terence was calling out to him .....
5. The boy hurt himself when he jump down from the tree. ....
6. They use the paper wrap everything. ....

**Task 10. Change these sentences into the passive.**

1. We must write to him.  
.....
2. They were painting the wall at that time.  
.....
3. People play football all over the world.  
.....
4. Somebody told him to wait out side.  
.....
5. One uses milk for making butter and cheese.  
.....
6. They didn't tell me the truth about the situation.  
.....
7. Did they build the house in 1360?  
.....
8. They broke the window.  
.....

**Task 11. Choose the correct verbs to complete these sentences**

1. The first photograph \_\_\_\_\_ in France. (is taken / was taken)
2. The lightbulb \_\_\_\_\_ by Thomas Edison. (invented / was invented)
3. The Pyramids \_\_\_\_\_ by the ancient Egyptians. (built / were built)
4. John Logie Baird \_\_\_\_\_ the television in 1926. (invented / was invented)
5. The first helicopter \_\_\_\_\_ in 1939 by Igor Sikorsky. (flew / was flown)
6. Gustave Eiffel \_\_\_\_\_ the Eiffel Tower in 1889. (built / was built)

**Task 12. Change the following sentences from active voice to passive voice**

1. Someone has broken the window.  
\_\_\_\_\_.
2. Have the students finished the exercises?  
\_\_\_\_\_?
3. The mail carrier will deliver the letter.  
\_\_\_\_\_.
4. Someone took the bicycle away.  
\_\_\_\_\_.
5. A thief stole all his furniture in his house.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 13. Choose the correct answer**

1. Do you know who \_\_\_\_\_ penicillin?  
A. discovered                      B. did discover  
C. was discover                      D. discovers
2. Last night when I \_\_\_\_\_ television, Lan came.  
A. watched                      B. was watching  
C. have watched                      D. was watched
3. Bread is made \_\_\_\_\_ bread flour and yeast.  
A. from                      B. in                      C. by                      D. up
4. Today's most important \_\_\_\_\_ is the football semifinal results.  
A. selection                      B. competition  
C. event                      D. accident
5. I won't take that hamburger. I'm on \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. an exercise                      B. a diet  
C. a campaign                      D. a practice



**Task 14. Arrange these words to make complete sentences**

1. happy / you / hear / from / I / am / to
2. anxious / to / wait / the / test / for / I / am / results
3. it / common / to / wear / is / slippers / house / in / the
4. unusual / is / to / it / wear / high / heels / to / beach / the
5. is / it / teeth / good / important / have / to / help / us / because / they / our / food / help / us / nice / look / to / chew / make.

**Task 15. Translate into English**

1. Cắm điện máy in rồi mở máy.
2. Lấy giấy cũ ra và nạp giấy mới vào khay đút giấy.
3. Đợi cho nút nguồn nháy sáng.
4. Các trang hiển thị trên màn hình máy tính.
5. Nhấp chuột vào biểu tượng trên màn hình và đợi một vài giây.
6. Trong một phút bản in sẽ đi ra từ đầu kia.

**Task 16. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets**

1. You will (be) \_\_\_\_\_ met at the airport by my uncle.
2. Beer (may, not) \_\_\_\_\_ be sold to minors.
3. This report must (be) \_\_\_\_\_ signed by Mr. Binh.
4. Tomatoes should be (plant) \_\_\_\_\_ in the spring.
5. (be) \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone invented by Thomas Edison?
6. How (be) \_\_\_\_\_ candles (make) \_\_\_\_\_?
7. The students will be (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ their results next week.
8. My proposal will be (accept) \_\_\_\_\_.

**Task 17. Choose the suitable prepositions to complete the following sentences**

1. There is a window \_\_\_\_\_ the right side of the room. (on / at / in)
2. She succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ teaching and she loved her job. (at / in / of)
3. She threw herself \_\_\_\_\_ the river. (into / at / in)
4. We went to the countryside \_\_\_\_\_ the weekend. (at / on / in)
5. Can I speak \_\_\_\_\_ Hong, please? (to / at / in)

**Task 18. Sentence transformation**

1. There is an interesting film that we can see this week.  
There is \_\_\_\_\_

2. The programme was interesting. The children didn't want to go to bed early.

The programme \_\_\_\_\_

3. It was a bad performance. The audience went home early.

It was \_\_\_\_\_

4. Today is not Sunday. I have to work.

If \_\_\_\_\_

5. He wants someone to take photographs.

He wants \_\_\_\_\_

**Task 19. Complete the following sentences with an appropriate form of the word in block capital**

1. At my school access to the Internet is \_\_\_\_\_ in the afternoon only. **AVAIL**
2. I want to be a fashion \_\_\_\_\_ when I grow up. **DESIGN**
3. Twenty years ago my hometown was small. Now it has turned into an \_\_\_\_\_ city. **INDUSTRY**
4. My uncle often spends his free time doing volunteer work at a local \_\_\_\_\_. **ORPHAN**
5. The manager made an \_\_\_\_\_ to see us at two o'clock. **ARRANGE**

**Task 20. Choose the suitable words to complete the sentences**

1. He's very intelligent. \_\_\_\_\_, he's quite lazy. (but / so / however)
2. You'll be in trouble if you \_\_\_\_\_ my passport. (lose / will lose / lost)
3. Quynh Dao is my \_\_\_\_\_ novelist. (favourite / preferable / favorable)
4. This isn't my first visit to Hue. \_\_\_\_\_ here before. (I've been / I was / I'm)
5. I didn't heard you \_\_\_\_\_ in. You must have been very quiet. (come / came / to come)

\*\*\*



## KEYS

### Unit 1: MY FRIENDS

#### II. EXERCISES

##### Task 1.

1.D      2.A      3.C      4.B      5.A

##### Task 2.

- |             |              |                  |
|-------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. receive  | 2. blond     | 3. character     |
| 4. sociable | 5. orphanage | 6. orphan        |
| 7. generous | 8. extremely | 9. volunteer     |
|             |              | 10. hard-working |

##### Task 3.

- |              |             |             |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. next door | 2. brown    | 3. bald     |
| 4. grade     | 5. reserved | 6. outgoing |
| 7. joke      | 8. humorous | 9. annoy    |
|              |             | 10. shy     |

##### Task 4.

- |               |           |                  |
|---------------|-----------|------------------|
| 1. appearance | 2. planet | 3. keep in touch |
| 4. cupboard   | 5. ladder | 6. willingly     |
| 7. friendship | 8. mutual | 9. trusted       |
|               |           | 10. earth        |

##### Task 5.

- The weather today is warm enough for you to go out.
- Is she intelligent enough to find it out?
- They were quick enough to catch the thief.
- The shoes are not big enough for me to wear.
- As students in the 8<sup>th</sup> grade, we are not old enough to ride a motorbike

##### Task 6.

- went ----- go...
- don't ----- doesn't...
- hasn't-----doesn't have...
- lives-----live, live ----- lives...
- a full of-----a garden full of ...
- enough strong -----strong enough...
- for -----to
- no from-----aren't from
- is -----are
- Our car new-----Our new car

##### Task 7.

- |                     |               |                     |            |
|---------------------|---------------|---------------------|------------|
| 1. finished         | 2. is working | 3. goes             | 4. left    |
| 5. is smoking       | 6. flow       | 7. 'll buy          | 8. do-read |
| 9. finishes-will go |               | 10. will give-visit |            |

##### Task 8.

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. D | 3. C | 4. B |
| 5. B | 6. C | 7. D | 8. C |

##### Task 9.

- He has got dark hair.
- My brother is quite good looking.
- Have you got any brothers and sisters?
- Betty has got fair hair.
- I How much are these postcards?
- Can you play the piano?
- I can't drive a car.
- It's twenty to four in the morning.

##### Task 10.

- |          |            |               |          |
|----------|------------|---------------|----------|
| 1. at-on | 2. with-at | 3. with-at/on | 4. to-on |
| 5. x     | 6. in      | 7. at-in-x    | 8. on-of |
| 9. in    | 10. x      |               |          |

##### Task 11.

- The ladder isn't long enough to reach the window.
- He is strong enough to carry the suitcase.
- The house wasn't cheap enough for us to buy it.
- He wasn't patient enough to wait for you.
- That chair isn't comfortable enough for me to sit on it.
- These oranges are not sweet enough for us to eat.
- You aren't well enough to go to school today.
- I am not strong enough to help you.

##### Task 12.

- She is a **beautiful** singer and she sings **beautifully**.
- My parents enjoy the **peace** of the countryside.
- Everybody works **quietly** in the library.
- Nguyen does everything **diffrently** from his classmates.
- Nga felt **extremely** upset about losing her job.



**Task 13.**

1. I enjoy telling the jokes.
2. He is tall enough to touch the light.
3. My brother is generous enough to lend someone money.
4. What is he like?
5. The question is not difficult for us to answer.

**Task 14.**

- 1.B      2.C      3.C      4.A      5.A

**Task 15.**

1. He has big brown eyes.
2. She married a short fat man.
3. My teacher has long, straight, dark hair.
4. It is a big black car.
5. She is a beautiful girl.

**Task 16.**

1. They tried to avoid **answering** my questions.
2. I dislike **wearing** uniform at school.
3. Could you please stop **asking** me such stupid questions?
4. He suggested **waiting** for a while.
5. Have you finished **cleaning** the room yet?

**Task 17.**

1. Do you have any difficulties in **solving** this problem?
2. He is good at **repairing** household.
3. He advised him **not to cross** the street against the red lights.
4. She isn't tall enough **to reach** that high shelf.
5. Would you mind if I **took** a photo?

**Task 18.**

1. Pick **up** your litter! Don't drop it on the street!
2. He used to smoke, but he gave **up** last year.
3. I'm looking **for** yesterday's newspaper. Have you seen it?
4. Could you fill **in** this form, please?
5. Don't worry about the baby. I'll look **after** her while you're away.

**Task 19.**

1. Kim **went** to America last year.
2. I **had** an English test last week.
3. Yesterday I **saw** Chau in the supermarket.
4. I **studied** this school 2 years ago.
5. When I **was** a child. I used to live there.

**Task 20.**

- |               |           |            |           |            |
|---------------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1. knives     | 2. leaves | 3. women   | 4. feet   | 5. geese   |
| 6. sandwiches | 7. nurses | 8. coaches | 9. houses | 10. chairs |

**Unit 2. MAKING ARRANGEMENTS****II. EXERCISES****Task 1.**

1. C      2. B      3. B      4. A      5. C

**Task 2.**

- |                      |                 |                             |
|----------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. arrangement       | 2. fax machine  | 3. public telephone         |
| 4. address book      | 5. mobile phone | 6. telephone directory      |
| 7. answering machine | 8. downstairs   | 9. upstairs      10. cousin |

**Task 3.**

- |                 |              |                                 |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. emigration   | 2. deaf-mute | 3. experiment                   |
| 4. transmission | 5. invention | 6. assistant                    |
| 7. countless    | 8. introduce | 9. demonstrate      10. conduct |

**Task 4.**

- |               |               |                             |
|---------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. exhibition | 2. commercial | 3. delivery service         |
| 4. customer   | 5. stationery | 6. racket                   |
| 7. tennis     | 8. trick      | 9. service      10. exhibit |

**Task 5.**

- |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. am not going to have     | 5. am going to wave        |
| 2. is going to fall         | 6. Are you going to invite |
| 3. are we going to spend    | 7. am going to wash        |
| 4. are going to get married | 8. are going to lie down   |



**Task 6.**

1. will- won't    2. isn't going to    3. will    4. won't
5. Will    6. are you going to

**Task 7.**

1. C    2. D    3. A    4. B    5. D    6. B

**Task 8.**

1. I'll phone you when I get home.
2. I buy the Times.
3. I'll have the lamb.
4. I'll answer it.
5. I'll open the door.
6. I'll call you as soon as I arrive there.

**Task 9.**

1. She is going to visit her parents tomorrow evening.
2. The man couldn't read the newspaper because he lost his glasses.
3. I'll be able to speak English well if I study hard.
4. Vietnamese New Year is my favourite festival.
5. Hong likes playing tennis very much.
6. She had to stay in bed for one week after the accident.

**Task 10.**

1. for    2. at    3. for    4. for    5. x
6. in    7. with    8. of    9. at    10. of

**Task 11.**

1. How are you going to get to school tomorrow?
2. What kind of car is he going to buy?
3. Who are you going to meet tonight?
4. What is Lan going to wear to the wedding party?
5. How long is your family going to stay in Ha Noi?
6. When are you going to paint your house?
7. Where are you going to buy a new house?
8. Where are they going to meet?

**Task 12.**

1. Alexander Graham Bell **successfully** demonstrated his **invention** in the public.
2. You needn't shout because I am not **deaf**.
3. Alexander Graham Bell was born in **Scotland**.
4. Nga is one of my **friends**. She always talks to everyone in a **friendly** way.
5. He told this fairy story to his daughter **countless** times.

**Task 13.**

1. The question is easy enough for all of us to answer.
2. Tuan swims very well.
3. My brother is good at fixing the household appliances
4. I am going to visit my friends next Sunday.
5. She doesn't have enough time to go to the party.

**Task 14.**

1. C    2. B    3. A    4. B    5. D    6. C

**Task 15.**

1. Please go downstairs and get me a glass of water.
2. I have travel everywhere in the world but nowhere is as beautiful as this place.
3. Have you seen my glasses, mom?  
It's somewhere in your bedroom.
4. All of my friends are in the living room. They are talking very cheerfully.
5. Her house is somewhere in this street.
6. Someone will steal your car if you leave it unlock.
7. She will be absolutely angry if she hear about this.
8. Does he like boiled eggs?

**Task 16.**

1. Someone **is knocking** at the door. Shall I answer it?  
I **am coming** in a minute. I **am just washing** my hands.
2. **Are you doing** anything this evening?  
No, I'm not.  
Well, I am going to the cinema. Would you like to come with me?



3. We **are having** breakfast at 6 o'clock tomorrow because Lan is **catching** an early train.
4. Nga usually does shopping but I **am doing** it today because she isn't fine.
5. Philip **is going to** Da Lat with his friends next week.

**ask 17.**

1. She never makes **any** mistakes in spelling.
2. Please give me **some** more coffee.
3. Do you have **any** questions?
4. Are there **any** chairs in the living room?
5. I don't have **any** money with me.
6. The baby is asleep. Please don't make **any** noise.

**ask 18.**

1. You shouldn't laugh **at** the disabled.
2. Why don't you bring **along** an umbrella.
3. They listen to the music **on** the internet.
4. Remote control are used to interact **with** TV.
5. Tuan left school **at** the age of 15.

**ask 19.**

1. We **are eating** dinner at seven o'clock tonight.
2. A dictionary is a book which **gives** you the meaning of words.
3. **Is it raining** now?
4. You can't borrow my bike. I **don't need** it at the moment.
5. I never **get up** early on Sundays.

**ask 20.**

1. What is the day **when** you celebrate your birth?
2. Da Lat is the city **where** I was born?
3. The pencil **which** you broke is my brother's.
4. Is this the problem **which** you are trying to solve?
5. Is this the program **which** you always on TV?

**Unit 3. AT HOME**

**II. EXERCISES**

**Task 1.**

- |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.C | 2.D | 3.D | 4.D | 5.B |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

**Task 2.**

- |                |             |               |
|----------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. chore       | 2. cupboard | 3. steamer    |
| 4. sink        | 5. saucepan | 6. frying pan |
| 7. rice cooker | 8. rug      | 9. precaution |
|                |             | 10. chemical  |

**Task 3.**

- |           |                    |                |
|-----------|--------------------|----------------|
| 1. match  | 2. destruction     | 3. cover       |
| 4. injure | 5. electric socket | 6. electricity |
| 7. reach  | 8. bead            | 9. scissors    |
|           |                    | 10. knife      |

**Task 4.**

- |            |              |               |
|------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. folder  | 2. wardrobe  | 3. towel rack |
| 4. beneath | 5. dusty     | 6. tidiness   |
| 7. tank    | 8. sidewalks | 9. luckiest   |
|            |              | 10. musician  |

**Task 5.**

- |            |               |               |               |
|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. himself | 2. myself     | 3. themselves | 4. yourselves |
| 5. myself  | 6. myself     | 7. herself    | 8. himself    |
| 9. myself  | 10. ourselves |               |               |

**Task 6.**

- |               |             |              |              |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. generous   | 2. noisy    | 3. healthy   | 4. personal  |
| 5. collection | 6. activity | 7. teenagers | 8. education |

**Task 7.**

1. Who did he visit last week?
2. Which kind of car goes 300 k.p.h?
3. Who invited him to dinner yesterday?
4. Which TV did you buy?
5. Which book do they read for class?
6. Who asked the question?

**Task 8.**

- |     |     |     |     |      |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| 1.A | 2.A | 3.B | 4.B | 5.A  |
| 6.A | 7.C | 8.D | 9.C | 10.B |



ask 9.

- |           |           |              |               |              |
|-----------|-----------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. best   | 2. quiet  | 3. sidewalks | 4. restaurant | 5. neighbors |
| 6. Paulo  | 7. see    | 8. musician  | 9. He         | 10. plays    |
| 11. jazz  | 12. plays | 13. Susan    | 14. artist    | 15. She      |
| 16. money | 17. and   | 18. luckiest | 19. live      |              |

ask 10.

- much -----many
- an ice cream-----ice cream
- I like -----I would like
- fruits-----fruit
- I have thirsty -----I am thirsty.
- wanted -----want
- to help -----help
- It's starting rain-----It starts raining
- to see-----to seeing,
- I think to change----- I'm thinking of changing.

ask 11.

- What **is making** that terrible noise?
- What **does** she **do** in the evenings?
- The last train **leaves** the station at 11 o'clock.
- Lan **is making** a dress for herself now.
- I am afraid I've broken one of your coffee cups.  
Don't worry. I **don't like** that set anyway.
- I **am wearing** my sunglasses today because the sun is very strong.

Task 12.

- Be **careful**! The car is coming.
- I was **nervous** before the race started.
- I **will phone** you as soon as I arrive in Can Tho City.
- They **stopped** talking when I came in.
- It's difficult **to find** a comfortable flat here.

Task 13.

- What did your former teacher look like? – She was very nice.
- Trang was interested in talking about her favourite sport.
- My friend is a good swimmer.
- Tam is not old enough to ride a motorbike.
- She is the most beautiful girl in my class.

Task 14.

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. A | 3. B | 4. A | 5. A |
|------|------|------|------|------|

Task 15.

- I'm afraid I can't go out with you. I **have to** learn for my next examination.
- You **must** think over before answering my questions.
- Tomorrow is our public holiday so we **don't have to** get up early.
- I'm a new comer here so I **have to** ask direction to everywhere.
- You **must** put the sharp things out of children's reach.

Task 16.

- I go to school by myself everyday.
- Let's go out for dinner tonight.
- There is a wardrobe in the right side of the room.
- You must obey your parents' advice.
- My boss asks me to meet him at the restaurant.

Task 17.

- I have been waiting **for** you for half an hour.
- He is interested **in** your plan.
- Do you believe **in** ghosts?
- I have lived in Ho Chi Minh **since** 1993.
- I remember his name but I can't think **of** his face.

Task 18.

- |         |          |          |          |
|---------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. bus  | 2. candy | 3. tooth | 4. foot  |
| 5. deer | 6. sheep | 7. city  | 8. watch |



**Task 19.**

1. She is so kind that everyone loves her.
2. They talked so quickly that I couldn't catch up with them.
3. It was such good coffee that I had another cup.
4. Tam is not strong enough to lift the heavy box.
5. She is too young to get married.

**Task 20.**

1. Nobody has **ever** done this before.
2. Is there an interesting film **at** the cinema today?
3. If you're not careful, you'll hurt **yourself**.
4. According **to** her, there is nothing to be done.
5. It is the most beautiful building **in** the world.

**Unit 4: OUR PAST****II. EXERCISES****Task 1.**

- 1.D      2.C      3.B      4.D      5.A

**Task 2.**

- |                  |                |                         |
|------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. great-grandma | 2. equipment   | 3. folk tale            |
| 4. foolish       | 5. greedy      | 6. daughter             |
| 7. unfortunately | 8. fortunately | 9. cruel      10. upset |

**Task 3.**

- |                |          |                            |
|----------------|----------|----------------------------|
| 1. prince      | 2. fairy | 3. appearance              |
| 4. magically   | 5. rags  | 6. escape                  |
| 7. immediately | 8. graze | 9. nearby      10. servant |

**Task 4.**

- |             |               |                             |
|-------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. wisdom   | 2. straw      | 3. performs                 |
| 4. festival | 5. gramophone | 6. umbrellas                |
| 7. around   | 8. church     | 9. magazine      10. stripe |

**Task 5.**

- |                       |                     |                      |
|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. met, like          | 2. didn't sing, had | 3. didn't ride, took |
| 4. Did you read, read | 5. didn't swim, sat |                      |

**Task 6.**

- |           |          |            |         |             |
|-----------|----------|------------|---------|-------------|
| 1. was    | 2. died  | 3. studied | 4. came | 5. kept     |
| 6. was    | 7. began | 8. took    | 9. met  | 10. painted |
| 11. wrote | 12. won  |            |         |             |

**Task 7.**

- |       |       |       |       |           |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|
| 1. on | 2. in | 3. On | 4. on | 5. before |
| 6. at | 7. on | 8. In | 9. at | 10. after |

**Task 8.**

1. Do you like oranges?
2. I How much money do you have?
3. Who are you?
4. Did you eat my chocolate?
5. What did you say?
6. Where are you going?
7. Can I borrow your car tonight?

**Task 9.**

- 6, 4, 7; 5, 3, 2, 1, 8

**Task 10.**

- |                 |                        |                    |
|-----------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. used to go   | 2. used to get up      | 3. used to attract |
| 4. used to take | 5. used to play truant |                    |

**Task 11.**

1. I didn't have any money yesterday, so my roommate **lent** me enough so I could pay for my lunch.
2. When Lan slipped on the icy sidewalk yesterday, she **fell** down and **hurt** her back. Her back is very painful today.
3. The children **drew** pictures of themselves in art class yesterday.
4. I have a cold. Yesterday I **felt** terrible, but I'm feeling better today.
5. I dropped my favourite vase. It **fell** on the floor and **broke** into a hundred pieces.

**Task 12.**

1. I was born in Can Tho **in** 1982.
2. I first were in Da Lat **in** 2001.
3. My birthday is **in** July.
4. I learn Japan at this center **on** Tuesday, Thursday and Saturday.



5. Do you work **on** Saturday afternoon?
6. I am going to Mui Ne **on** Tuesday.
7. I usually watch TV **at** dinner.
8. At Chirstmas, I often receive a lot of gifts
9. You can hand in exercises **between** Monday and Thursday.
10. I usually do exercises **in** the morning.

#### Task 13.

1. It's dangerous to go out at night.
2. Nga isn't interested in travelling by plane.
3. He acts very well.
4. She is young and beautiful.
5. Because she was lazy, she failed in her exam.

#### Task 14.

1. D                      2.B                      3.D                      4.B                      5.A

#### Task 15.

1. Don't worry, Nga! I can look after everything **carefully**.
2. I want **to come** with my grandmother.
3. It is not safe **to leave** knives around the house.
4. His doctor adviced him **not to smoke** cigarettes.
5. In my University, students **have to** wear uniform when they go to school.

#### Task 16.

1. My father **used to tell** me folktales when I was a child.
2. Our family moved to Ho Chi Minh last year. We **used to live** in Can Tho.
3. He **used to smoke** cigarettes, didn't he?
4. Life here is much easier than it **used to be**.
5. I **used to do** everything by my hands.

#### Task 17.

1. This coffee smells **of** oil.
2. She is laughing **at** him.
3. Ottawa is **in** Canada.
4. I'm tired **of** boiled eggs.
5. It's time **for** our lesson to start.

#### Task 18.

1. Do you remember the day **when** we first met?
2. This is a place **where** the accident happened.
3. That is the reason **why** I have to quit the job.
4. Hung works for a company **which** makes coffee.
5. I always remember the day **when** he left for Canada.

#### Task 19.

1. Tuyet used to live in Can Tho when she was a small girl.
2. My sister is watching TV in the sitting room at the moment.
3. This is the most enjoyable vacation we have ever had.
4. We are going to Hue tomorrow to celebrate the festival with our friends.
5. I'm not working tomorrow, so we can go somewhere.

#### Task 20.

1. She fell off the bike, but her **injuries** were not serious.
2. You must read the following **safety** precautions carefully.
3. I receive a lot of **encourage** from my parents.
4. The children should be punished because of their bad **behaviour**.
5. My parents are very **proud** of me.

### Unit 5. STUDY HABITS

#### II. EXERCISES

##### Task 1.

- 1.D                      2.A                      3.C                      4.B                      5.C

##### Task 2.

- |            |                   |                              |
|------------|-------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. habit   | 2. report         | 3. excellent                 |
| 4. proud   | 5. first semester | 6. improvement               |
| 7. Spanish | 8. pronunciation  | 9. behavior      10. believe |

##### Task 3.

- |                  |                  |                            |
|------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. promise       | 2. came across   | 3. co-operation            |
| 4. satisfactory  | 5. participation | 6. meaning                 |
| 7. mother tongue | 8. stick         | 9. fair      10. underline |



**Task 4.**

- |              |                |              |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. highlight | 2. revise      | 3. necessary |
| 4. lunar     | 5. sore throat | 6. replant   |
| 7. comment   | 8. aloud       | 9. command   |
|              |                | 10. begged   |

**Task 5.**

- |                |              |             |            |            |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| 1. beautifully | 2. carefully | 3. badly    | 4. quietly | 5. happily |
| 6. fast        | 7. well      | 8. terribly | 9. hard    | 10. late   |

**Task 6.**

- |                 |            |               |               |          |
|-----------------|------------|---------------|---------------|----------|
| 1. with         | 2. from    | 3. over       | 4. to - about | 5. after |
| 6. at - in - at | 7. in - in | 8. with - for | 9. about      | 10. for  |

**Task 7.**

- |               |                      |            |             |           |
|---------------|----------------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. to catch   | 2. open              | 3. to stop | 4. to drink | 5. skiing |
| 6. to see     | 7. learning/to learn | 8. to say  |             |           |
| 9. to shut up | 10. to marry         |            |             |           |

**Task 8.**

1. I was very surprised to get your letter.
2. I didn't know you had been back to London.
3. Did you have a good time in New York?
4. I'm looking forward to hearing all about it.
5. Thank you for inviting me to dinner next weekend.
6. I'm afraid I shall not be able to come on Sunday.
7. But I'll be free the following weekend.
8. Why don't you call me (sometime) in the next few days.

**Task 9.**

1. When we last met, we talked about our gardens.
2. You told me you had often grown roses in your garden.
3. Well, I bought half a dozen of rose plants last November.
4. Four of these are growing well at present.
5. But I am worried about the other two.
6. These are the first roses I've ever grown.
7. I'd like to have your advice about them very much.
8. Will you come to see them this weekend or next?

**Task 10.**

1. .... "Please stop making noise."
2. .... his sister to try her best at school.
3. ... to help him with English.
4. ... "Don't watch TV any more."
5. ...late for anything to be done/ to do anything.
6. ...whether/if John would come (or not).
7. ...Barry to put a lock on the door.
8. ....how long it had been since Bob Heft that city.
9. ...fond of (interested in) reading the stories she writes.

**Task 11.**

1. He advises me to listen to English cassette about 15 minutes every day.
2. The policeman ordered the man to give him his driving license.
3. Kim told me to wait for her a few minutes.
4. I told my sister to lend me her Japanese book for a moment.
5. She told the boys not to play football in the street.

**Task 12.**

1. A    2. A    3. D    4. A    5. A    6. D    7. B    8. D

**Task 13.**

1. I am pleased to hear that you passed your examination.
2. She told me to show her how to learn English.
3. He is good at English but bad at math.
4. My sister told me to call her again at 8 o'clock.
5. He told Lan to call him soon.
6. My father told me not to stay up late.
7. The woman told the taxi driver to follow the black car.
8. I have just had a wonderful holiday with my cousins in Nha Trang.

**Task 14.**

1. A: **Did** you **sleep** well last night?  
B: Yes, I **did**. I **slept** very well.
2. A: **Did** you **have** breakfast this morning?  
B: No, I **didn't**. I **hadn't** enough time. I was late for class because my alarm clock **didn't** ring.



3. A: **Did** you **read** the newspaper this morning?  
B: No, I **didn't**. I had no time.
4. A: **Did** you **stay** home last night?  
B: No, I didn't. I went to the cinema.
5. A: Last midnight a thief **broke** into my neighbor's house and **stole** a lot of things.  
B: So we have to key our house carefully.

#### Task 15.

1. Shut the door, please.
2. Open the fan, please.
3. Don't make noise, please.
4. Don't stay up late, please.
5. Wash your hand before having lunch, please.

#### Task 16.

1. What do you do to improve your English?
2. Miss Lan taught me English last year.
3. You should finish your exercises before watching television.
4. May I come in?
5. My English teacher advised me to study English 30 minutes everyday.

#### Task 17.

1. He felt annoyed **with** me.
2. Does this pen belong **to** you?
3. My younger sister is very fond **of** chocolate.
4. You're very good **at** explaining everything.
5. I am interested **in** reading English book.

#### Task 18.

- |          |             |          |              |
|----------|-------------|----------|--------------|
| 1. teeth | 2. families | 3. mice  | 4. countries |
| 5. women | 6. fish     | 7. sheep | 8. fans      |

#### Task 19.

1. This pencil is not good. Please take it and give me **another one**.
2. Do you like my new shirt? It's **a new one**.
3. Phuong doesn't like coffee, **neither** does Hong.
4. I went to sleep **during** the concert.
5. **Unless** you work harder, you won't be able to pass the exam.

#### Task 20.

1. Our life is much better with the help of modern **equipment**.
2. She was **foolish** to say that.
3. You shouldn't talk about her character only through her **appearance**.
4. She works for a **national** bank in Ha Noi.
5. Fruit juices and milk are **healthful** drinks, aren't they?

#### Unit 6. THE YOUNG PIONEERS CLUB

#### II. EXERCISES

##### Task 1.

- |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.C | 2.B | 3.C | 4.A | 5.D |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

##### Task 2.

- |                  |                       |                    |
|------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. young pioneer | 2. youth organization | 3. participate     |
| 4. blind         | 5. handicapped        | 6. enroll          |
| 7. application   | 8. passport           | 9. hobby 10. offer |

##### Task 3.

- |                  |              |                        |
|------------------|--------------|------------------------|
| 1. assistance    | 2. resource  | 3. citizenship         |
| 4. encouragement | 5. fitness   | 6. although            |
| 7. coeducation   | 8. worldwide | 9. voluntary 10. scout |

##### Task 4.

- |                    |                |                         |
|--------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. street children | 2. Soaking wet | 3. recycle              |
| 4. sidewalk        | 5. register    | 6. support              |
| 7. foundation      | 8. aim         | 9. consider 10. suggest |

##### Task 5.

- |             |                    |                      |
|-------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 2. can't    | 3. can             | 4. to be able to     |
| 5. couldn't | 6. couldn't        | 7. to be able to     |
| 8. can      | 9. could, couldn't | 10. won't be able to |

##### Task 6.

- |     |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.B | 2.A | 3.D | 4.D | 5.B | 6.A |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

##### Task 7.

- |            |            |              |            |
|------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. to read | 2. to see  | 3. listening | 4. to cook |
| 5. play    | 6. playing | 7. camping   | 8. drawing |



**Task 8.**

- |                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 2. I'll get you sonic iced tea.   | 3. I'll answer the door.    |
| 4. I'll lend you some.            | 5. I'll get a taxi for you. |
| 6. I'll have a porter carry them. |                             |

**Task 9.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1.h  | 2.g  | 3.d  | 4.m  | 5.l  |
| 6.e  | 7.k  | 8.c  | 9.n  | 10.a |
| 11.f | 12.b | 13.j | 14.o | 15.i |

**Task 10.**

- |                  |                              |
|------------------|------------------------------|
| 2. will get      | 3. will give you             |
| 4. are going for | 5. are you going to phone me |
| 6. wilt, will    | 7. am going to pay           |

**Task 11.**

- Excuse me. What time **does** the plane **take off**?  
It **takes** off in an hour.
- Does the train **leave** at 10.30 tomorrow?  
No, it **leaves** at 11.30.
- Why **are** you **putting** on your coat?  
I **am going** to the supermarket. **Are** you **coming** with me?  
Yes, I'd love to.
- I have a cold. Yesterday I felt terrible, but I **am felling** better today.
- My friend **is coming** to our apartment for dinner tonight.

**Task 12.**

- Where do you live and do you have a phone number?
- Please take this form to your teacher and ask her to sign it.
- How long have you lived there?
- I like drawing and I enjoy acting too.
- When you get out of the hotel, turn right.

**Task 13.**

- I like listening to music. Nga enjoys reading book.
- Please turn off the light when you go out.
- They have to spend more time on their English.
- That store opened last month.
- I don't know where Lan is. She could be at home.

**Task 14.**

- A: Can you do me a favor?  
B: What can I do for you?  
A: Could you open the window, please?  
B: Certainly.
- A: Could you do me a favour?  
B: How can I help you?  
A: Could you turn down the radio, please?  
B: Certainly.
- A: Let me help you?  
B: Could you take these dirty dishes into the kitchen?  
A: Sure.  
B: Thanks a lot.

**Task 15.**

1. A      2. B      3. A      4. A      5. D

**Task 16.**

- Hong: Ba always gets excellent grades.  
Nga: That's because she studies **well**.
- Hong: That's our bus!  
Nga: Run **fast** and we might catch it.
- Hong: I'm very sorry. I know I behaved **badly**.  
Nga: It's all right.
- Hong: I can't hear you, Nga.  
Lan: Sorry, but I'm speaking **softly** because I have a sore throat.

**Task 17.**

- There are **some** beautiful flowers in the garden.
- They haven't got **any** children.
- When we were on holiday, we visited **some** very interesting places.
- There are a lot of shoes in this shop. **Some** are very expensive, **some** are cheap.
- If you didn't have **any** questions to ask me, we can stop here.



**Task 18.**

1. Selfish people only care **about** themselves.
2. They never thought **about** it again.
3. I am sitting **between** my father and my mother.
4. I am good **at** Mathematics.
5. I am bad **at** Literature.

**Task 19.**

1. Because she was lazy, she failed in the exam.
2. I used to have a dog.
3. The front yard isn't big enough for children to play soccer in.
4. I'll help you if you like.
5. It is not necessary for you to set off early.

**Task 20.**

1. Her **beauty** makes everybody admire.
2. We accept your kind **invitation** with pleasure.
3. I **practise** the piano every day.
4. This is the best book that I have read **lately**.
5. The baby is **asleep**. Please don't make any noise.

**Unit 7. MY NEIGHBORHOOD****II. EXERCISES****Task 1.**

- 1.A      2.B      3.A      4.D      5.B

**Task 2.**

- |                  |               |                            |
|------------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| 1. grocery store | 2. wet market | 3. serve                   |
| 4. pancake       | 5. delicious  | 6. tasty                   |
| 7. parcel        | 8. airmail    | 9. surface mail   10. roof |

**Task 3.**

- |               |                    |                             |
|---------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. convenient | 2. humid           | 3. customer                 |
| 4. business   | 5. resident        | 6. concerned                |
| 7. situation  | 8. air-conditioner | 9. discount      10. effect |

**Task 4.**

- |                  |                |                            |
|------------------|----------------|----------------------------|
| 1. contact       | 2. purse       | 3. wallet                  |
| 4. hairdresser's | 5. wristwatch  | 6. motorbike               |
| 7. close by      | 8. around here | 9. already      10. reside |

**Task 5.**

1. as    2. than    3. as    4. than    5. as    6. as

**Task 6.**

1. for    2. since    3. for    4. for    5. since    6. for

**Task 7.**

- |             |          |            |           |
|-------------|----------|------------|-----------|
| 1. neighbor | 2. moved | 3. Hooking | 4. store  |
| 5. any      | 6. near  | 7. across  | 8. barber |

**Task 8.**

- |                |                   |             |         |
|----------------|-------------------|-------------|---------|
| 1. like        | 2. Could          | 3. baker's  | 4. in   |
| 5. in order to | 6. different from | 7. changing | 8. like |

**Task 9.**

1. Can you help me to open it please?
2. Could you please show me the way to the post office?
3. May I come in?
4. It's my seat. You can't sit here.
5. Where is the changing room?
6. My house is next to the cinema.

**Task 10.**

- |                   |                           |           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|-----------|
| 1. so/ as bright  | 2. brighter               | 3. finest |
| 4. most difficult | 5. worse                  | 6. best   |
| 7. prettier       | 8. elder/ oldest (eldest) |           |

**Task 11.**

1. I **spent** a holiday with my parents in Nha Trang last week.
2. My motorbike is very new. I **have** just **washed** it.
3. I **didn't** go to school yesterday.
4. I **called** her several times this morning.
5. I **haven't seen** him four years. I don't know where he is now.
6. Your bicycle looks very new. **Have** you **painted** it?
7. They **built** this house last year. They **haven't finished** yet.
8. The weather **has been** very cold in the morning recently.



**Task 12.**

1. Lan sings as **well** as her sister.
2. Her house is the same **height** as yours.
3. Your dress is the same **as** mine.
4. Chau has as **many** books as I.
5. Her character is different **from** her mother.
6. My pen is similar **to** yours.

**Task 13.**

1. We have lived here for ten years.
2. I haven't written to my friend since June.
3. She hasn't visited me for two years.
4. Lan has studied English since 2004.
5. We haven't met each other for a long time.

**Task 14.**

1. Would you like some coffee? I **have** just **made** some.
2. Here are your shoes; I **have** just **cleaned** them.
3. I **haven't known** him before.
4. Why **haven't** you **mended** the fuse?
5. I **have** often **seen** her but I **have** never **spoke** to her.
6. We **have had** six tests so far this semester.

**Task 15.**

1. A                      2.B                      3. A                      4. A                      5. B

**Task 16.**

1. I haven't seen her for a long time.
2. Do you want to send it airmail or surface mail.
3. A new shopping mall is opening in Nga's neighborhood today.
4. My brother has taught English for ten years.
5. What is special about the new shopping mall?

**Task 17.**

1. Your parents always proud **of** your success.
2. The park was named **after** a young hero, Le Van Tam.
3. Shall we go for a picnic tomorrow? - It depends **on** the weather.
4. I'm not very keen **on** the ideal of going out.
5. Are you interested **in** jazz? No, I prefer pop.

**Task 18.**

1. Have you **ever** been to England?
2. I arrive here **on** 15 July.
3. I'm thirsty. I'd **like** a cup of tea.
4. How much does your watch **cost**? "About 50000VND"
5. She was **so** friendly that everybody liked her.

**Task 19.**

1. Would you mind showing how to operate this machine?
2. Would you mind if I sat here waiting for the manager?
3. Do you mind If I take a photo of you?
4. Would you mind lending your book for a moment?
5. Would you mind if I used your cell phone for some minutes?

**Task 20.**

1. We are waiting for the **arrival** of his plane.
2. Every week there are two **flights** from Ha Noi to Nha Trang.
3. He spoke to me in a **friendly** way.
4. I don't like stories which have **unhappy** ending.
5. Despite being **successful**, she is always modest.

**Unit 8. COUNTRY LIFE AND CITY LIFE****II. EXERCISES****Task 1.**

- 1.C                      2.D                      3.D                      4.A                      5.A

**Task 2.**

- |              |                |                               |
|--------------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. fresh air | 2. traffic jam | 3. view                       |
| 4. away      | 5. permanently | 6. remote                     |
| 7. facility  | 8. accessible  | 9. definitely      10. belief |

**Task 3.**

- |              |            |                                  |
|--------------|------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. plentiful | 2. rural   | 3. overcrowding                  |
| 4. typhoon   | 5. supply  | 6. drought                       |
| 7. struggle  | 8. tragedy | 9. strain              10. urban |



**Task 4.**

- |               |                     |                                |
|---------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. government | 2. migrant          | 3. adequate                    |
| 4. pressure   | 5. medical facility | 6. harvest                     |
| 7. skirt      | 8. convenient       | 9. shine      10. examinations |

**Task 5.**

- |                   |             |              |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. conveniences   | 2. comforts | 3. roads     |
| 4. transportation | 5. lights   | 6. hospitals |
| 7. schools        |             |              |

**Task 6.**

- |                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. is doing             | 2. haven't cleaned |
| 3. are- doing- am going | 4. visited         |
| 5. will begin           | 6. Have-seen       |
| 7. is going/ will go    | 8. Is sitting      |
| 9. was cooking          | 10. is looking     |

**Task 7.**

- |                            |               |                      |
|----------------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| 1. is rising               | 2. is getting | 3. is becoming       |
| 4. is changing             | 5. is rising  | 6. has been improved |
| 7. is getting/ is becoming |               |                      |

**Task 8.**

- |           |         |           |        |
|-----------|---------|-----------|--------|
| 1. an     | 2. the  | 3. a- the | 4. the |
| 5. a- the | 6. a- a | 7. The    | 8. a-a |

**Task 9.**

1. I am the oldest in my family.
2. My sister is younger than me.
3. Who is the oldest in the class?
4. Concorde is the fastest passenger plane in the world.
5. My book is more interesting than your book.
6. Peter bought the most expensive watch in the shop?
7. Did you buy the cheapest in the shop?
8. Today the weather is much better than yesterday.

**Task 10.**

1. We are going to the countryside for a holiday next summer.
2. People living in rural are friendlier than people in cities.
3. In the country sides, the food is less expensive than that in the towns.
4. There is much more pollution in big cities than that in the countries.
5. There is much more fresh air in the countries than that in big cities.

**Task 11.**

1. The skirt is **prettier** than that one.
2. His family has **much more money** than mine.
3. Nga is **more intelligent** than her brother.
4. Mount Everest is **the highest** in the world.
5. Nam is **the tallest** boy in the family.
6. Kim is **more intelligent** than I.
7. This chair is **more comfortable** than that one.
8. This room is **more convenient** than that one.

**Task 12.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. B | 4. C | 5. B | 6. A |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**Task 13.**

1. What kind of music do you like best? – I like country music.
2. Is this the film you like best? – Yes, it is.
3. How far is it from your house to school? – About 20 minutes.
4. Hurry up, it is going to rain.
5. Do you prefer country life or city life?

**Task 14.**

1. **Is it raining?**

Yes, it **is raining** very hard. You can't go out yet.

2. I can't hear what you **are saying**; the traffic **is making** too much noise.

3. **Are you doing** anything this evening?

No, I am not.

Well, we **are going** to the cinema. Would you like to go with us?

4. It's a gray day today. The sun **isn't shining**.

5. Nga, What's the matter with you? It **is bleeding**.

**Task 15.**

1. I **leave** home at 7 o'clock every day.
2. I **ate** dinner at the restaurant yesterday.
3. Hung **is taking** a taxi to the airport tomorrow.
4. While I was watching TV, the phone **rang**.
5. My mother **is teaching** English at the high school.
6. Lan **is wearing** a new dress today.
7. Yen is good at Chinese but bad at English. So now she is **practising** English.



**ask 16.**

1. What kinds of programs do you like best?
2. She spends too much money on clothes.
3. Would you like to live in a big city?
4. What do you usually do in the evening?
5. Can you explain this word with me?
6. She was on a trip to Nha Trang for four days.
7. I go to the amusement part every Sunday morning.
8. I like detective film.

**ask 17.**

1. The lesson is **so** difficult that all students can't understand it.
2. **How long** have they been married? - For nearly six months.
3. Where **did you go** last night?
4. She looks **like** her mother.
5. Would you like some sugar?

Yes, please. Just a little.

**ask 18.**

1. I haven't **spoken to her for six years**.
2. It is **Lan's fourteenth birthday next week**.
3. When **did you start to use the computer**?
4. Tuan **used to run faster than he can now**.
5. I have never **used a better motorbike than this**.

**ask 19.**

1. She always makes fun **of** him.
2. Do you know the girl **with** a curly hair.
3. I can't get to sleep **on** Christmas Eve. I am so excited.
4. I waited twenty minutes **for** a bus yesterday. (for / by / on)
5. My parents is coming to stay with me **on** 15 July.

**ask 20.**

1. **Polluted** air is one of many problems we have to solve.
2. Internet is now an **important** forum for exchanging opinions and ideals.
3. I want to go out but it's raining **heavily**.
4. The shop **assistant** showed me a lot of new models, especially it's cheap.
5. She is a **kind** person. She always helps everybody who has in trouble.

**Unit 2. A FIRST-AID COURSE****II. EXERCISES****Task 1.**

- |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.A | 2.B | 3.C | 4.C | 5.B |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

**Task 2.**

- |              |              |                         |
|--------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| 1. first-aid | 2. emergency | 3. ambulance            |
| 4. conscious | 5. towel     | 6. handkerchief         |
| 7. wound     | 8. pressure  | 9. promise 10. minimize |

**Task 3.**

- |               |              |                       |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------------|
| 1. bandage    | 2. stretcher | 3. crutch             |
| 4. wheelchair | 5. eye chart | 6. fainting           |
| 7. patient    | 8. force     | 9. elevate 10. victim |

**Task 4.**

- |              |                |                         |
|--------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| 1. shock     | 2. overheat    | 3. tissue               |
| 4. damage    | 5. sterile     | 6. somewhere            |
| 7. calm down | 8. immediately | 9. offended 10. forward |

**Task 5.**

- |       |       |           |       |
|-------|-------|-----------|-------|
| 1. on | 2. at | 3. at- in | 4. at |
| 5. in | 6. by | 7. on     | 8. by |

**Task 6.**

- |                |                |               |                |
|----------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. is improved | 2. ambitions   | 3. decision   | 4. differences |
| 5. useful      | 6. explanation | 7. industrial | 8. speciality  |

**Task 7**

1. We do not throw rubbish carelessly so as not to pollute the environment.
2. Smokers must know the danger of smoking in order to stop smoking.
3. Mary should eat a lot of green vegetables in order to have good health.
4. Mr. Smith is hurrying so as not to be late for work.
5. We celebrate Mother's Day so as to show our love and gratitude to our mothers.
6. They rushed into the burning house in order to save the child.

**Task 8.**

- 1 ... is much cheaper than traveling by plane.
- 2 ... never tasted such a more delicious cake before.



- 3 ... children can not run into the road.
- 4 ... think it will rain.
- 5 ... heavy for the children to push.
- 6 ... buy a house in that district for less than \$100000.
- 7... you will help me to give this to the teacher.
- 8 ... what you've said she told John.

**ask 9.**

1. are you doing, will stay, do
2. will the baby be
3. Will you pick
4. are you doing, will Hook, will do

**ask 10.**

- 1A: It's very dark. Can you turn the light on please?
- 2A: Yes, I promise, I will do that.
- 3A: Do you like coffee? Yes, I do.
- 4B: Would you like to have an English course?
- 5A: Could you please tell me the way to the post office?
- 6A: Can I borrow your book?

**ask 11.**

1. I am sure that you **will like** our new bicycle.
2. If you think it over, you **will see** that I am right.
3. She **will be offended** if you don't invite her.
4. He hopes that he **will win** the first prize.
5. I **will remember** this day all my life.
6. I **will call** you when I arrive.
7. If I have a lot of money, I **will buy** this motorbike for you.
8. I **will call** you in a few minutes.
9. I think that Jack probably **will win** the first prize.
10. I **will come** to you immediately when I finish working.

**ask 12.**

1. A
2. A
3. C
4. B
5. C

**Task 13.**

1. Where did you go last night? – I went to the supermarket last night.
2. I haven't known you before.
3. Have you finished your work?
4. Don't worry. I will help you.
5. When I came, he was sleeping.
6. You should take an umbrella. It's going to rain.
7. There will be a flight to Nha Trang at 7 o'clock tomorrow morning.
8. Thank you for lending me the camera. I will bring back to you on Monday.

**Task 14.**

1. I am looking forward to seeing you soon.
2. Thank you very much for your help.
3. The flowers were beautiful and they really helped to cheer me up.
4. A lot of trees will be grown in the park.
5. He does exercises regularly every morning to be healthy.

**Task 15.**

1. I enter the room quietly in order not to wake my younger sister up.
2. He is staying up late in order to see the final football match.
3. I have to put on my glasses so as to see that film.
4. I am studying hard in order not to fail the examination.
5. She's on a diet in order to lose weight.
6. I try my best to study in order to get a good job.
7. I spend much time practising English in order to speak English well.
8. I checked my test carefully so as not to make any mistakes.

**Task 16.**

1. What can I get for you?
2. Could you drive slowly, please?
3. Could you take it off, please?
4. Let me give you a lift.
5. Could you open the window, please?

**Task 17.**

1. He **left** for Ha Noi yesterday.
2. When we **arrived** last night, they were playing chess.



3. Why **did** Hoa **go** to school late this morning?

Because she watched TV late last night.

4. When I arrive there I **will** call you.

5. Last week our class **had** a test. It **was** very difficult and almost everybody couldn't do it.

#### Task 18.

1. We have **become** close friends for a long time.

2. I have **collected** stamps since 2000.

3. We have **lived** here for ten years.

4. It's **very** important to keep the environment clean.

5. I'm very sad **not to be accepted** in that school.

#### Task 19.

1. It takes a long time to learn a new language, **doesn't it**?

2. The opposite of beautiful is **ugly**.

3. Whose book is it? It's my **sister's**.

4. **How** did she feel? - Very nervous.

5. If I were you, I **wouldn't buy** that bicycle.

#### Task 20.

1. Each of my friends has a **different** character.

2. She has short **curly** hair.

3. There are a lot of **traditional** festival in Viet Nam.

4. You must make a quick **decision** whether you go or not.

5. The **performance** she gave last night was marvellous.

### Unit 10. RECYCLING

#### II. EXERCISES

##### Task 1.

1.B      2.A      3.B      4.A      5.A

##### Task 2.

1. recycling	2. reduce	3. wrap
4. fertilizer	5. decompose	6. representative
7. package	8. plastic bag	9. cloth bag    10. metal

##### Task 3.

1. fabric	2. compose	3. pipe
4. refill	5. glassware	6. deposit
7. waste	8. mixture	9. mosquito    10. scatter

##### Task 4.

1. instead	2. industrious	3. explain
4. delightful	5. detergent	6. leather
7. relieve	8. shade	9. soak        10. occur

##### Task 5.

1. flatten    2. take    3. melt    4. Produce    5. make

##### Task 6.

1. is recycled	2. are taken	3. is collected	4. is taken
5. is broken	6. is melted	7. is made	

##### Task 7.

1.C      2.C      3.C      4.A      5.B      6.C

##### Task 8.

1. It's very hard to find a good job.
2. This book is easy to read.
3. It's important to keep vocabulary records.
4. I'm pleased to see that you've stopped smoking.
5. It's impossible to keep the house tidy with five children.
6. It was lovely to see you last night.

##### Task 9.

1. successful	2. lucky	3. romantic	4. windy
5. different	6. important	7. happy	8. healthy
9. personal	10. generous		

##### Task 10.

1. how much money was spent on its development?
2. How many planes have been built altogether?
3. When were the houses of parliament built?
4. Where is champagne produced?
5. how often is our post delivered?
6. What were three teenagers given an award for yesterday?



**ask 11.**

1. America was discovered by Columbus.
2. The thief was caught by the police.
3. Children were not properly looked after.
4. The date of the meeting has been changed.
5. The glass was broken by Tam.
6. My handbag was left on the bus by Nga this morning.
7. English is spoken everywhere.
8. Was she given a lot of special presents by her friends on her birthday?
9. A lot of films were seen last night.
10. The house was built in 2000.

**Task 12.**

1. I am very happy to see you again.
2. It is very important to keep the environment clean.
3. It is very common to wear slippers in the house.
4. It is easy to sing this song.
5. It is very interesting to talk to him.
6. It is difficult to translate these words into English.
7. You are very lucky to get this prize.
8. It is difficult to solve the problem.

**Task 13.**

1. It is **difficult to make him laugh**.
2. Mr. Tam **drives carefully**.
3. The woman is **rich enough to buy what she likes**.
4. It's **very important to be on time**.
5. We are very sad **that the teacher is very ill**.
6. We are very happy **that we keep the friendship for a long time**.

**Task 14.**

1. That car is recycled in Japan.
2. The books are published in Da Nang.
3. It's difficult to solve this problem.
4. Tomatoes should be planted in the spring.
5. The report has been written by Miss Lan.

**Task 15.**

1. A                      2. C                      3. A                      4. C                      5. B

**Task 16.**

1. I was told to wait by the nurse.
2. I was taken to another room by the nurse.
3. The dog is hit by the car.
4. Am I understood by everybody in the class?
5. The food will be prepared by my mother.

**Task 17.**

1. He goes **to** work at nine o'clock every day.
2. We have played tennis **for** two hours.
3. We'll know the result of the examination **in** two weeks.
4. You can meet me **between** 7 a.m and 9 a.m.
5. They give their children toys **at** Christmas.

**Task 18.**

1. I'm going away for a few days. I'll phone you **when** I get back. 2.  
You should inform the police **if** your bicycle is stolen.
3. They decided to go out to eat **because** they had no food at home.
4. **Because** he changed a lot, we didn't recognise him.
5. **If** you're ready, we can start now.
6. The air is polluted **because** there is too much traffic.

**Task 19.**

1. **Unless** you work harder, you won't be able to pass the exam.
2. How **well** did they sleep?
3. It took us quite a long time to get there. It was **a three-hour** journey.
4. I went to sleep **during** the film.
5. It's late. It's time **we went** home.

**Task 20.**

1. Our teacher always **encourages** us to study hard.
2. This form must have the **signature** of the writer.
3. This book is very **useful** because it mentions a lot of different situations we usually face.
4. It's very **dangerous** for children to play with knives.
5. It is a very simple question. You can answer it **easily**.



## EXERCISES

## Task 1.

1.C      2.B      3.A      4.A      5.A

## Task 2.

- |                      |                     |                          |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. around            | 2. airport          | 3. sugar cane            |
| 4. luggage           | 5. batanical garden | 6. institute             |
| 7. Oceanic Institute | 8. harbor           | 9. offshore    10. giant |

## Task 3.

- |                  |                   |                           |
|------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. accommodation | 2. waterfall      | 3. low priced             |
| 4. move up       | 5. mountain slope | 6. stream                 |
| 7. recognize     | 8. heritage       | 9. tribal      10. buddha |

## Task 4.

- |             |                |                          |
|-------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. cave     | 2. magnificent | 3. limestone             |
| 4. sunbathe | 5. florist     | 6. seaside resort        |
| 7. canoe    | 8. overturn    | 9. paddle    10. stumble |

## Task 5.

- |             |           |           |             |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. Island   | 2. begins | 3. wooden | 4. probably |
| 5. pleasant | 6. caves  | 7. trip   | 8. back     |

## Task 6.

- |              |            |         |           |
|--------------|------------|---------|-----------|
| 1. didn't go | 2. stayed  | 3. did  | 4. helped |
| 5. cleaned   | 6. watered | 7. went | 8. saw    |

## Task 7.

- |           |               |            |             |
|-----------|---------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. angry  | 2. interested | 3. afraid  | 4. annoying |
| 5. scared | 6. cross      | 7. furious | 8. careless |

## Task 8.

- The capital of France is Paris.
- Traveling by plane takes less time than traveling by train.
- Eiffel Tower is located in France.
- Snow falls in winter.
- People dance when they are happy.
- The earth moves around the sun.
- Our body temperature is 37°C.

## Task 9.

- Good morning Madam, can I help you?
- Yes, I want to open my account.
- Would you mind filling in this form first?
- Not at all, may I borrow your pen?
- Certainly, How much would you like to deposit in your account?
- 100 USD in check. Is it alright?
- I'm afraid, I don't bring my identity card. Will a passport do?
- Certainly, now please take a seat and wait for your name to be called.

## Task 10.

- |               |           |         |         |
|---------------|-----------|---------|---------|
| 1. done       | 2. taking | 3. done | 4. made |
| 5. made       | 6. take   | 7. made | 8. take |
| 9. took/ made | 10. does  |         |         |

## Task 11.

- Do you **mind if I turn on the television**?
- Would you mind **not playing your music so loudly**?
- Do you mind **if I close the door**?
- I would **rather you didn't use the office phone**.

## Task 12.

- Everybody is running out of the building burning quickly.
- What's the girl's name singing this song very well?
- Do you like the film shown on TV last night.
- The girl sitting next me is intelligent.
- The women speaking to me on the phone was very interested in our project.

## Task 13.

- Tam cut himself while he was shaving.
- Our English teacher took us to the zoo last week.
- Do you mind if I close the window?
- Tuyet doesn't dance as well as Chau does.
- My classmate is the girl talking to Miss Thu.



ask 14.

1. Do you mind if I smoke a cigarette here?
2. Would you mind taking me to the airport?
3. Would you mind if I tried on your shoes?
4. Would you mind taking a picture for me?
5. Would you mind posting this letter for me?
6. Would you taking this book to the library for me?
7. Would you mind putting my case on the rack?
8. Would you mind cleaning the table for me?

ask 15.

1. Would you mind if I borrowed your cell phone?
2. Would you mind turning off the TV?
3. Would you mind lifting the box?
4. Would you mind if I opened the door?
5. Are we far from Ha Noi? It's about a 40 minute drive from the city center.

ask 16.

1. It's difficult to understand him.
2. It's difficult to solve this problem.
3. It's difficult to open that jar.
4. It's hard to master a language.
5. It's difficult to get a taxi in this town.

ask 17.

1. She speaks English well, **doesn't she**?
2. Do you mind **taking** me home?
3. Nga has been working here since she **left** university.
4. **Shall** I carry that bag for you? - Oh, thank you.
5. The club is for members only. You **can't go in unless** you're a member.

ask 18.

1. Are there any good programs **on** television tonight?
2. My morning routine is to get up at seven, have breakfast, then leave home **at** eight.
3. To give **up** a bad habit is very difficult.
4. I got **on** the plane at 10 a.m and the plane took off on time.
5. I'll look **after** your children while you go to work.

Task 19.

1. He grew **impatient** after waiting for a long time.
2. It was a **difficult** time, but we never gave up hope.
3. My house is near market, so it's **convenient** for me in buying foods for my family.
4. He is **strong** enough to carry this suitcase.
5. Ha Long Bay is in **northern** Viet Nam.

Task 20.

1. I **am not going** out this evening. I am staying at home.
2. I **will rememer** this day all my life.
3. I wonder how many of them still **will be** there next year.
4. You should practise **speaking** English everyday.
5. I **learned** Chinese at university, but now I **have forgotten** most of it.
6. We **have already finished** the first semester exams.
7. We **are having** a party next Sunday. Would you like to come?
8. Miss Giang **hasn't visited** us since she moved to the new town.

Unit 12 A VACATION ABOARD

II. EXERCISES

Task 1.

- |     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.A | 2.C | 3.D | 4.B | 5.C |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|

Task 2.

- |            |             |                |
|------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. include | 2. suitable | 3. come over   |
| 4. ticket  | 5. double   | 6. sightseeing |
| 7. humid   | 8. volcano  | 9. lava        |
|            |             | 10. pour       |

Task 3.

- |             |          |             |
|-------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. overhead | 2. wharf | 3. prison   |
| 4. carve    | 5. shore | 6. brochure |
| 7. situate  | 8. awful | 9. terrible |
|             |          | 10. spicy   |

Task 4.

- |             |             |               |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. handbag  | 2. raincoat | 3. regularly  |
| 4. manages  | 5. suppose  | 6. absence    |
| 7. employer | 8. floating | 9. agreement  |
|             |             | 10. according |



**Task 5.**

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. vacation plans | 2. travel abroad |
| 3. any plans      | 4. some time     |
| 5. by myself      |                  |

**Task 6.**

- |                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. took, was drinking        | 2. saw, was waiting      |
| 3. went, were writing        | 4. were sitting, started |
| 5. was cooking, were playing |                          |

**Task 7.**

- |                 |                 |               |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. left         | 2. was moving   | 3. remembered | 4. went        |
| 5. traveled     | 6. missed       | 7. left       | 8. was shining |
| 9. didn't bring | 10. was waiting | 11. started   |                |

**Task 8.**

- |        |       |       |       |           |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|
| 1. on  | 2. in | 3. of | 4. to | 5. in     |
| 6. for | 7. of | 8. at | 9. of | 10. about |

**Task 9.**

- 1 ... reasons for their complaint about our behavior.
- 2 ... that he should cut down on drinking.
- 3 ... haven't been told about that.
- 4 .... has been sold.
- 5 ... live very far from her aunt's house.
- 6 ... is thought that the window was broken by your students.
- 7 ... three years now since she graduated.
- 8 ... think we are going to have rain/ it is going to rain.

**Task 10.**

- |                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. payment        | 2. international |
| 3. carelessly     | 4. childhood     |
| 5. amazement      | 6. surprisingly  |
| 7. satisfactorily | 8. dishonesty    |

**Task 11.**

1. Nguyen **was waiting** for me outside the theater when I **came**.
2. At four o'clock yesterday morning, we **were drinking** coffee and **listening** to music at the coffee shop.
3. My younger sister **entered** the university one year ago.
4. When the teacher **came in**, the students **were reviewing** them the lesson.
5. While I **was riding** my motorbike on the way to school this morning, my motorbike **broke** down.

**Task 12.**

1. This time last Sunday we **were staying** at Nha Trang.
2. Lan is never satisfied. He **is always complaining**.
3. You **are always watching** television. You should do something more active.
4. We **left** the coffee shop and **said** goodbye.
5. I **met** a friend when I **was doing** shopping.
6. When I **was waiting** for his call, Lan **called** me.
7. When I **was** in bad situation, he **appeared** and **helped** me.
8. Last night when I **came** back home, I **went** to bed immediately.

**Task 13.**

1. Were they watching TV at 7 o'clock last night?  
They were not watching TV at 7 o'clock last night.
2. Was my mother cooking in the kitchen?  
My mother wasn't cooking in the kitchen.
3. Was he listening to music?  
He wasn't listening to music.
4. Were Nguyen and Hai talking about football?  
Nguyen and Hai were not talking about football.
5. Was it raining outside?  
It was not raining outside.

**Task 14.**

1. What were you doing when I called you last night?
2. A boy slipped when he was going down the stairs.
3. At this time last year I was spending a summer holiday with my family in Nha Trang.
4. We were listening to my teacher explaining the lesson when the headmaster came in.
5. When I was watching television, the phone rang.

**Task 15.**

1. We are now planning a holiday for next summer.
2. Our holiday will begin on July 15<sup>th</sup> and we will return on July 18<sup>th</sup>.
3. We would be grateful if you could send us some information with details of charges.
4. Next week, it is Nhung's fifteenth birthday.
5. Government all over the world are trying to provide facilities for the poor.



ask 16.

1. A      2. A      3. D      4. B      5. B

ask 17.

1. They are talking **about** the next Olympic Games.
2. The children were delighted **at** the TV programme last night.
3. I'm always interested **in** the reason why he left here early.
4. These goods are free **of** duty.
5. Do you approve **of** your younger's sister career?

ask 18.

1. He gave me a piece of cheese. He put the **bit** of cheese in his pocket.
2. Foreign language **is** not an easy subject for everybody.
3. Some people have difficulty in making **themselves** understood.
4. It's a public holiday next month.  
Yes, I know. **Are you doing** anything special?
5. I'm trying to move this cupboard, but it's very heavy. Well, I **help** you then.

ask 19.

1. Is this river deep enough to **swim** in?
2. I haven't got enough money to pay for a taxi.
3. The fire isn't hot enough to boil the kettle.
4. There isn't enough food on the table.
5. At the age of 14 you aren't old enough to buy alcohol.

ask 20.

1. I'm going to apply for a **scholarship** to attend an English language summer course abroad.
2. My house, though small, is very **convenient** for the bus station.
3. The job sounds interesting. I think I'd better write a letter of **application** for more detail.
4. Mai got poor marks for her homeworks because she hadn't paid much **attention** in class.
5. Because it hasn't rained for months, there has been a serious **shortage** of fresh water.

## Unit 13. FESTIVALS

### II. EXERCISES

#### Task 1.

- 1.A      2.A      3.B      4.B      5.A

#### Task 2.

- |             |             |                       |
|-------------|-------------|-----------------------|
| 1. festival | 2. pottery  | 3. fetch              |
| 4. upset    | 5. yell     | 6. previous year      |
| 7. teammate | 8. separate | 9. husk      10. urge |

#### Task 3.

- |                |              |                               |
|----------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. judge       | 2. council   | 3. tailor                     |
| 4. pomegranate | 5. Chirstmas | 6. decorate                   |
| 7. marigold    | 8. spread    | 9. throughout      10. design |

#### Task 4.

- |                |                 |                             |
|----------------|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Santa Claus | 2. Patron saint | 3. competition              |
| 4. professor   | 5. jolly        | 6. jumble                   |
| 7. mushroom    | 8. plumber      | 9. crowed      10. communal |

#### Task 5.

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. celebrate         | 2. family        |
| 3. sorts of things   | 4. Christmas Eve |
| 5. Father Christmas  | 6. lunch         |
| 7. Christmas pudding | 8. presents      |
| 9. games             | 10. nice         |

#### Task 6.

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. worried                   | 2. were knocking              |
| 3. get                       | 4. have-been                  |
| 5. was built                 | 6. Have you seen them lately? |
| 7. haven't spoken- quarreled | 8. to wait                    |
| 9. to write/to be written    | 10. working                   |

#### Task 7.

- |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.B | 2.B | 3.C | 4.C |
| 5.A | 6.C | 7.A | 8.B |



**Task 8.**

1. Coffee is grown in Kenya.
2. The Times newspaper is published in London.
3. The letter will be written by me.
4. Oranges are transported from Valencia to Germany in special crates.
5. The parcel is being sent by sea.
6. The forests are being destroyed in Indonesia.
7. The man was eaten by the shark.
8. The fire was started by the arsonist.
9. He was taken away by the police.
10. He has been treated very well by them.

**Task 9.**

1. A new church has just been built near my house.
2. You will be laughed at if you wear that silly hat.
3. They grew tobacco thousands of years ago.
4. lie is said to be the best doctor.
5. That house was bought in 1980.
6. Nam answered most of the questions.

**Task 10.**

- |                      |                      |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. mountain climbing | 2. fire making       |
| 3. tree planting     | 4. house cleaning    |
| 5. TV watching       | 6. cock fighting     |
| 7. pie eating        | 8. film making       |
| 9. dress making      | 10. air conditioning |

**Task 11.**

1. This festival wasn't organized some years ago.
2. The sink was broken in the kitchen.
3. Grass is cut in our garden twice a week.
4. New houses are built in this city every year.
5. The trip has been cancelled.

**Task 12.**

1. Nguyen told Van that he could see her the next day.
2. Nga said that she couldn't cook.
3. Van said that she had two brothers.
4. Nam said that he was thirsty.
5. Hong said that she was a student.

**Task 13.**

1. B                      2. A                      3. A                      4. B                      5. B

**Task 14.**

1. Please tell her I will call her at 6 o'clock.
2. I think I must go to the baker's to get some bread.
3. Mr. Robinson said that he enjoyed the festival very much.
4. Six people from each team took part in the rice - cooking contest.
5. How many tons of rice were exported to Japan last year.

**Task 15.**

1. What is the name of the festival? Where was the festival held?  
How long did the festival last?
2. Christmas is an important festival in many countries around the world.
3. What do you think about the festival?
4. Pieces of bamboo are used to make the fire.
5. What's special about the fire-making contest?

**Task 16.**

1. The teacher told us not to talk in class.
2. The librarian told them not to make so much noise in the library.
3. Huong told Nga to bring the table here.
4. Mrs. Huong told her son to take out the rubbish.
5. He asked who was playing the following week.
6. I asked Nga to lend me a pen for a moment.
7. He told the liftman to take him up to the 33<sup>rd</sup> floor.
8. She told us to do whatever we liked.

**Task 17.**

1. He hasn't got any money. I haven't got any **either**.
2. He is a highly intelligent boy, **but** he is very lazy.
3. If An **was** more friendly, she would have more friends.
4. Could I have a word with you, please?  
Sorry, I'm in hurry. My train **leaves** in fifteen minutes.
5. Please let Nga **go** with you.



**Task 18.**

1. I'm looking forward **to** hearing from you.
2. I prefer dogs **to** cats. I hate cats.
3. We have lived in this city **since** 1993.
4. My father turned the television **on** to see the weather forecast.
5. I find it difficult **to** get up early.

**Task 19.**

1. Ha Long Bay was **recognized** as a World Heritage Site by UNESCO.
2. It's difficult to find **accomodation** in this city.
3. The town now becomes the buddhist **religious** center of the whole country.
4. The area **surround** the town used to be flooded.
5. Television is one of the most important **invention** of the 20th century.

**Task 20.**

1. Please don't touch anything early **until** the police come.
2. I'd be free by 5 p.m. If the meeting doesn't end **on** time. I'll have to make my apologies and leave.
3. She was reluctant to help us at first but **in** the end, she agreed to do what she could.
4. **By** the time you get letter, I'll be in Da Lat.
5. I am having a date **on** Thursday.
6. **In** the summer, Lan usually takes a part time job.

**Unit 14. WONDERS OF THE WORLD****II. EXERCISES****Task 1**

- 1.B      2.A      3.D      4.D      5.D

**Task 2.**

- |                  |              |                           |
|------------------|--------------|---------------------------|
| 1. wonder        | 2. canyon    | 3. guess                  |
| 4. crystal-clear | 5. reef      | 6. jungle                 |
| 7. clue          | 8. coral sea | 9. snorkel    10. amongst |

**Task 3.**

- |            |              |                         |
|------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| 1. compile | 2. statue    | 3. pyramid              |
| 4. claim   | 5. religious | 6. surround             |
| 7. royal   | 8. ruler     | 9. ranger      10. hike |

**Task 4.**

- |               |                |                             |
|---------------|----------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. edge       | 2. memoria     | 3. twin towers              |
| 4. expedition | 5. breaktaking | 6. inquired                 |
| 7. refuse     | 8. volunteer   | 9. neglect      10. propose |

**Task 5.**

- |            |               |           |               |
|------------|---------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. city    | 2. million    | 3. area   | 4. skyscraper |
| 5. heart   | 6. story      | 7. famous | 8. assumed    |
| 9. weather | 10. outranked |           |               |

**Task 6.**

1. to buy    2. to watch    3. to eat    4. to visit    5. to become

**Task 7.**

1. What do you want to study?
2. What do you like cooking?
3. When did you start getting it?
4. Where are you thinking of going?
5. What would you like to do tonight?

**Task 8.**

- |            |                        |
|------------|------------------------|
| 1. walking | 2. to have - to eat    |
| 3. to see  | 4. painting            |
| 5. to earn | 6. to learn / learning |
| 7. to go   | 8. to find             |

**Task 9.**

- |            |           |           |            |
|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. to stop | 2. go     | 3. to eat | 4. to make |
| 5. to ski  | 6. skiing | 7. ski    | 8. to get  |
| 9. to keep | 10. to be |           |            |

**Task 10.**

1. The kitchen hasn't been cleaned yet.
2. The window of the shop was broken by a robber.
3. He wasn't punished for what he did.
4. My little brother will be Hooked after by Peter.
5. She was seen in Dresden by us the week before.



6. I have never been beaten at chess.
7. Susan is taken to hospital by our uncle.
8. The ear has been cleaned by us.
9. The children are helped by the police officers.
10. Bicycles mustn't be left in the driveway.

#### Task 11.

1. Tom aksed me if I had ever seen the film before.
2. He asked me why I was so hungry the day before.
3. My father asked me if I had helped my mother with the housework.
4. Nguyen asked me where I was going for my summer holiday.
5. She asked me if I had finished my work yet.
6. Hong asked Mrs Huong if her new baby was a boy or a girl.
7. Nguyen asked Nga how long it took to get to Ha Noi.
8. Tom asked Lan if he might borrow her car.

#### Task 12.

1. Lan took the book.
2. The boys have eaten the cakes.
3. They must answer all the questions on the paper.
4. You needn't type this letter.
5. Nobody has used this room.

#### Task 13.

1. President Ho Chi Minh Mausoleum **was completed** on August 29<sup>th</sup>, 1975.
2. What **happens** if I can't answer the question?
3. I don't know exactly **how many** friends to come to the birthday party.
4. I'm very **bored**. Let's go somewhere.
5. I don't know how **to tell** her about it.

#### Task 14.

1. The breakfast **will be prepaired** in the early tomorrow morning.
2. The man **brings** milk to us every day.
3. Every one **enjoyed** the play last night.
4. Is your motorbike still for sale? – No, I **have sold** it.
5. English **is spoken** in all the world.

#### Task 15.

1. I asked her **if she enjoyed her English class**.
2. I asked the shop assitant **how much it cost**.
3. I asked him **how long it took to get to Ha Long Bay**.
4. We wondered **why Tan sang loudly**.
5. Tell me **when the bus leave**.

#### Task 16.

1. I don't know **who to teach us History**.
2. I don't know **where to spend my summer holiday**.
3. I really don't know **what to become in future**.
4. Sure. I'll show you **how to learn English perfectly**.
5. Sure. I'll show you **how to get to the post office**.

#### Task 17.

1. The boy playing in the front yard is my neighbor's son.
2. All the people living in this country can speak both English and Cantonese.
3. The girl sitting next me is very intelligent and kindly.
4. The singer appearing in the music show last night is internationally famous.
5. The shirt made by the tailor at the end of the street is too long for me to wear.

#### Task 18.

1. I asked Lan if she knew my cousin.
2. Mai asked me if I was going to the downtown the next day.
3. I asked An if she would be at home tonight.
4. Hong asked me what I did after class.
5. I asked a salesman how much it cost.

#### Task 19.

1. You can buy electricial **appliances** at the shop over there.
2. **Consumers** should complain if they are not satisfied with the service they receive.
3. On this **joyful** occasion I'd like to thank you all for your contribution to our success.
4. An old **acquaintance** of my brother's showed me round the city during my stay there.
5. I like him for his **generosity**.



**Task 20.**

1. My favourite **subject** at school was history.
2. If she **comes**, she will get a surprise.
3. Our office needs a secretary **who** knows how to use various word processing programs.
4. This is the fifth time you **have asked** me the same questions.
5. Many people spend much time per day **watching** TV.

**Unit 15. COMPUTER****Task 1.**

- 1.A      2.A      3.C      4.B      5.B

**Task 2.**

- |             |              |                                |
|-------------|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. computer | 2. printer   | 3. document                    |
| 4. connect  | 5. proper    | 6. plug                        |
| 7. manual   | 8. guarantee | 9. disagree    10. unnecessary |

**Task 3.**

- |              |                    |                             |
|--------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. challenge | 2. monitor         | 3. adjust                   |
| 4. knob      | 5. telephone lines | 6. requirement              |
| 7. freshman  | 8. campus          | 9. restrict    10. bulletin |

**Task 4.**

- |                   |             |                            |
|-------------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| 1. bulletin board | 2. impact   | 3. degree                  |
| 4. skeptical      | 5. positive | 6. time-consuming          |
| 7. amuse          | 8. click    | 9. install    10. highland |

**Task 5.**

- |           |         |           |            |
|-----------|---------|-----------|------------|
| 1. has    | 2. ever | 3. have   | 4. Finish  |
| 5. months | 6. two  | 7. bought | 8. journey |

**Task 6.**

- |                         |                                 |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. haven't seen - since | 2. have been - for              |
| 3. have lived - since   | 4. left -- ago                  |
| 5. hasn't sent - since  | 6. has been ---- since          |
| 7. were - ago           | 8. haven't seen -- since - left |

**Task 7.**

1. Where have you gone----- Where did you go...
2. ..am ill-----have been...
3. ... have ceased ----- ceased ...
4. ...have finished ----- finished ...
5. ... went----- have gone...
6. ....do you read----- have you read...
7. ...made -- wished -----have made wish...
8. ....learns----- has learnt/ learned...

**Task 8.**

- |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| 1.A | 2.C | 3.B | 4.D |
| 5.A | 6.A | 7.D | 8.D |

**Task 9.**

2. Which is the best place you have ever been?
3. That was a good meal, wasn't it?
4. It has just started raining.
5. She has been a teacher since 1990.
6. We haven't been to Ho Chi Minh City yet.
7. I have never visited a foreign country.
8. Have they done the exercises yet?

**Task 10.**

1. .... has been finished building, the garden will be planed.
2. .... we suggested was all rejected.
3. .... very kind of you to help me.
4. .... are said to be the best singer in the town.
5. .... "Don't use the office phone for personal calls, Mary."
6. .... "Come to our dinner tonight, please."
7. .... him from buying a new bike.
8. .... "What's your name?"

**Task 11.**

1. Is your boss here? No, he **has just gone** out.
2. Where **were** you last Sunday? I **visited** my uncle in the country.
3. Welcome to my house. **Have** you ever **met** my brother?
4. I **lost** my wallet on the way home last night.



5. He **said** goodbye to everybody and **left** home at 8 a.m this morning.
6. I **have lost** my white gloves. **Have** you ever **seen** them anywhere?  
No, maybe you **left** them somewhere. When **did** you last **wear** them?  
I **wore** them at the theater last night.  
Perhaps you **left** them at the theater.
7. Have you ever **tried** to give up smoking?  
Yes, I **tried** last year, but then I **found** that I was getting fat so I **started** again.
8. I **have** just **seen** to the film War and Peace. **Have** you **seen** it?  
No, I haven't. Is it like a book?  
I **haven't read** the book.  
I **read** it when I **was** at school.  
When **did** Tolstoy **write** it?  
He **wrote** it in 1868.

#### ask 12.

1. My brother has run this company since last year.
2. He has played football for this team since 1998.
3. I have known him since I was a child.
4. I have learnt Japan for 9 months.
5. My family has lived here since I was 11 years old.

#### ask 13.

1. That's very old bicycle. I've had it **for** ages.
2. I have been on holiday **for** three days.
3. It is 2 years **since** I had a holiday.
4. My watch hasn't stopped working **since** this morning.
5. I have known him **for** a long time.

#### ask 14.

1. He has **collected stamps for two years**.
2. We have **known each other since we were students**.
3. I **am taken to the zoo by my father every week**.
4. This is **the first time I have played a computer game**.
5. The last time I **saw him when he left University**.
6. I have never **used a better computer than this**.

#### Task 15.

1. My uncle decided to give up smoking.
2. They agree to hold another meeting.
3. They need to meet their boss.
4. I am trying to go on a diet.
5. I don't enjoy going to the dentist.

#### Task 16.

1. I used to see him every day.  
I didn't use to see him every day.  
Did you use to see him every day?
2. He used to speak English very well.  
He didn't use to speak English very well  
Did he use to speak English very well?
3. She used to come to class early.  
She didn't use to come to class early.  
Did she use to come to class early?
4. She used to take the bus every morning.  
She didn't use to take the bus every morning  
Did she use to take the bus every morning?
5. They used to go for a walk every Sunday.  
They didn't use to go for a walk every Sunday.  
Did they use to go for a walk every Sunday?
6. They used to go to the cinema every Saturday.  
They didn't go to the cinema every Saturday.  
Did they use to go to the cinema every Saturday?

#### Task 17.

1. Your hair's too long. I think you **should** get it cut.
2. Giang works too much. I think she **should** take it easy.
3. Nga is too fat. She **should** go on a diet.
4. **Should** I go to bed early and get up early?
5. You **shouldn't** smoke too much cigarettes. It's not good to your health.



**Task 18.**

1. **How long** does it take to get to Da Lat from here?
2. The sun **rises** in the East and **sets** in the West.
3. My mother and my brother are really looking forward to **seeing** you again.
4. I'll look after the children while you **make** dinner.
5. We'll be late unless we **leave** now.

**Task 19.**

1. Arrange these files in order is a very time - **consuming** task.
2. Sign language is till used as a means of **communication**.
3. That kind of material is a wonderful discovery and they haven't found any **practical** use for it.
4. My brother usually cleans up around the house on the **weekend**.
5. The band consists of nine **musicians**.

**Task 20.**

1. My father **had worked** in that company for 20 years but he retired last year.
2. They **had** lunch 20 minutes ago.
3. Shopping from home is convenient, especially for people who lead **busy** lives.
4. Miss Nga is in front of the mirror and look at **herself**.
5. **Why** musn't children play with matches? - Because playing with matches can start fire.

**Unit 16. INVENTIONS****II. EXERCISES****Task 1.**

1. B      2. A      3. C      4. A      5. D

**Task 2.**

- |            |                        |                           |
|------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. papyrus | 2. manufacture         | 3. process                |
| 4. touch   | 5. reinforced concrete | 6. liquefy                |
| 7. grind   | 8. mold                | 9. facsimile    10. crush |

**Task 3.**

- |               |                  |                        |
|---------------|------------------|------------------------|
| 1. helicopter | 2. loudspeaker   | 3. procedure           |
| 4. wood pulp  | 5. microwave     | 6. fiber               |
| 7. convey     | 8. conveyor belt | 9. vat      10. vacuum |

**Task 4.**

- |              |            |                        |
|--------------|------------|------------------------|
| 1. appliance | 2. toaster | 3. hairdryer           |
| 4. utensil   | 5. ferment | 6. zipper              |
| 7. thresh    | 8. refine  | 9. mortar    10. maize |

**Task 5.**

- |          |                   |                            |
|----------|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. grain | 2. flatten        | 3. bran                    |
| 4. chip  | 5. printing press | 6. ingredient              |
| 7. firm  | 8. foreman        | 9. drain    10. chemically |

**Task 6.**

- |              |                |              |            |
|--------------|----------------|--------------|------------|
| 1. invented  | 2. significant | 3. applied   | 4. America |
| 5. discovery | 6. latest      | 7. inventive | 8. powers  |
| 9. design    | 10. Internet   |              |            |

**Task 7.**

- |             |                |                 |            |
|-------------|----------------|-----------------|------------|
| 1. monetary | 2. improvement | 3. growing      | 4. safety  |
| 5. money    | 6. borrowers   | 7. organization | 8. payment |

**Task 8.**

- |                      |              |
|----------------------|--------------|
| 1. Egyptians         | 2. mixture   |
| 3. chemically        | 4. invention |
| 5. official/ officer | 6. helpful   |

**Task 9.**

- |                          |                             |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. broke -----broken     | 2. to eat -----eating       |
| 3. what -----how         | 4. was calling ----- called |
| 5. jump -----was jumping | 6. wrap-----to wrap         |

**Task 10.**

1. He must be written to by us.
2. The wall was being painted at that time.
3. Foot ball is played all over the word.
4. He was told to wait out side.
5. Milk is used for making butter and cheese.
6. I was not told the truth about the situation.
7. Was the house built in 1960?
8. The window was broken.



**Task 11.**

1. The first photograph **was taken** in France.
2. The lightbulb **was invented** by Thomas Edison.
3. The pyramids **were built** by the ancient Egyptians.
4. John logie Baird **invented** the television in 1926.
5. The first helicopter **was flown** in 1939 in Igor Sikorsky.
6. Gustave Eiffel **built** the Eiffel Tower in 1889.

**Task 12.**

1. The window has been broken.
2. Have the exercises been finished by the students?
3. The letter will be delivered by the mail carrier.
4. The bicycle was taken away.
5. All his furniture in his house were stolen by a thief.

**Task 13.**

1. A
2. B
3. A
4. C
5. B

**Task 14.**

1. I am happy to hear from you.
2. I am anxious to wait for the test results.
3. It is common to wear slippers in the house.
4. It is unusual to wear high heels to the beach.
5. It is important to have good teeth because they help us to chew our food and to make us look nice.

**Task 15.**

1. Plug in the printer and turn on the power.
2. Remove the old paper and load the new paper in the paper input tray.
3. Wait for the power button to flash.
4. Have the pages appeared on the computer screen.
5. Click the printer icon on the screen and wait for a few seconds.
6. The printer paper will come out of the output path in a minute.

**Task 16.**

1. You **will be met** at the airport by my uncle.
2. Beer **may not be sold** to minors.
3. This report **must be signed** by Mr. Binh.
4. Tomatoes **should be planted** in the spring.
5. **Was** the telephone **invented** by Thomas Edison?
6. How **are** the candles **made**?
7. The student **will be told** their results next week.
8. My proposal **will be accepted**.

**Task 17.**

1. There is a window **on** the right side of the room.
2. She succeeded **in** teaching and she loved her job.
3. She threw herself **into** the river.
4. We went to the countryside **at** the weekend.
5. Can I speak **to** Hong, please?

**Task 18.**

1. There is **an interesting film for us to see this week**.
2. The programme **was so interesting that the children didn't want to go to bed early**.
3. It was **such a bad performance that the audience went home early**.
4. If **today were Sunday, I would not have to work**.
5. He wants **photographs to be taken**.



### Task 19.

1. At my school, access to the Internet is **available** in the afternoon only.
2. I want to be a fashion **designer** when I grow up.
3. Twenty years ago my hometown was small. Now it has turned into an **industrial** city.
4. My uncle often spends his free time doing volunteer work at a local **orphanage**.
5. The manager made an **arrangement** to see us at two o'clock.

### Task 20.

1. He's very intelligent. **However**, he's quite lazy.
2. You'll be in trouble if you **lose** my passport.
3. Quynh Dao is my **favourite** novelist.
4. This isn't my first visit to Hue. **I've been** here before.
5. I didn't heard you **come** in. You must have been very quiet.

\* \* \*

## MỤC LỤC

Lời nói đầu .....	3
Unit 1. My friends – Bạn bè của tôi .....	5
Unit 2. Making arrangements – Thu xếp .....	14
Unit 3. At home – Ở nhà .....	24
Unit 4. Our past – Thời xa xưa của chúng ta .....	33
Unit 5. Study habits – Thói quen trong học tập .....	43
Unit 6. The young pioneers club – Hội thiếu niên tiên phong .....	54
Unit 7. My neighborhood – Khu phố tôi .....	62
Unit 8. Country life and city life Cuộc sống nông thôn và cuộc sống thành thị .....	71
Unit 9. A first-aid course – Cách sơ cứu .....	82
Unit 10. Recycling – Sự tái chế .....	92
Unit 11. Traveling around Viet Nam - Du lịch khắp Việt Nam .....	103
Unit 12. A vacation abroad – Một kỳ nghỉ ở nước ngoài .....	111
Unit 13. Festivals – Các lễ hội .....	119
Unit 14. Wonders of the world – Các kỳ quan của thế giới .....	128
Unit 15. Computers – Máy điện toán .....	139
Unit 16. Inventions – Những phát minh .....	150
<b>Đáp án</b> .....	<b>158</b>
Unit 1. My friends .....	158
Unit 2. Making arrangements .....	161
Unit 3. At home .....	165
Unit 4. Our past .....	168
Unit 5. Study habits .....	171
Unit 6. The young pioneers club .....	175
Unit 7. My neighborhood .....	178
Unit 8. Country life and city life .....	181
Unit 9. A first-aid course .....	185
Unit 10. Recycling .....	188
Unit 11. Traveling around Viet Nam .....	192
Unit 12. A vacation abroad .....	195
Unit 13. Festivals .....	199
Unit 14. Wonders of the world .....	202
Unit 15. Computers .....	206
Unit 16. Inventions .....	210

\* \* \*